

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_152132

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

43680-0619

Copyright, 1945, by Linguistic Society of America

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

Book One

GENERAL FOREWORD

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks in more than thirty languages initially prepared and published for the Armed Forces and now offered to the general public. Like every other book in the series, it is the product of team-work between numerous collaborators. The authors of the various books have conformed throughout to the patterns developed by the experience of the group.

A brief review of the origin and growth of the program to produce these texts will not only be of general interest in itself but will also provide some indications of the manner in which they may be most efficiently used as well as some of the limitations of their employment.

Early in 1942, within a month of Pearl Harbor, the Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation began consideration of the means whereby large numbers of troops might be instructed in the colloquial forms of the numerous languages spoken in the areas in which they were likely to be employed. A survey of materials already available for such instruc-

tion confirmed their suspected inadequacy. Many of the pertinent languages had never been taught in the United States; few of them had ever been studied or described by competent linguists. Only the unusual textbook was designed to teach the spoken forms to linguistically untrained students, and even when a book was available, it was, as often as not, written in French, German, or Dutch, or for some other reason, not susceptible of general use. Consequently, the first necessity was a program of basic implementation which would provide materials, as nearly uniform throughout the various idioms as practicable, for elementary teaching of spoken language to Americans without special linguistic training or, indeed, aptitude. The form of the materials had to be such that they could be used for self-instruction in situations where no competent teachers were available.

There had been little study of most of these languages in America. But the Army and Navy fortunately did not have to start completely from scratch, for several

textbook designers contributed their specialized competences; technicians in the recording of sound made possible success in the exceedingly exacting operation of keying the records to the printed texts. Under such conditions it would seem almost invidious to cite the names of those collaborators, in addition to authors, whose contributions are more readily identifiable than those of others. Yet for the sake of the record, perhaps this should be done. The Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies, without which this series would not have been possible or would have been of completely different character, owes its existence to Mortimer Graves, Administrative Secretary of the Council. Colonel Francis T. Spaulding, Chief of the Army Education Branch above referred to, saw the implications of teaching language to American troops and assumed the responsibility for developing a program to this end. The detailed planning and construction of the series now presented owes more to Major (then Lieutenant) Henry Lee Smith, Jr., Chief of the Language Section in the Education Branch than to anyone else. Constant liaison with the Intensive Language Program was maintained through J. Milton Cowan, its director during the preparation of the series.

William E. Spaulding directed the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. The dean of American linguistic scientists, Leonard Bloomfield of Yale University, gave unstintingly in many ways—ways as difficult to appreciate too highly as they are to describe succinctly. Almost the same may be said of Lt. Morris Swadesh, Lt. Charles Hockett, Robert A. Hall, Jr., Norman A. McQuown, Doris Goss, José Padín, and others who served from time to time on a special advisory and editorial board.

The series is offered in the hope that it may modestly conduce to the improvement of teaching the speaking of foreign languages to Americans. The authors make no claim to perfection, indeed they are rather appalled at the task which they set themselves, and their pride in completing it under the existent conditions is tinged with humility at the thought of the imperfections which must sooner or later come to light. But through the discovery of these imperfections will come progress, and nobody will be more greatly pleased than the collaborators on this enterprise if, a decade from now, the teaching of spoken foreign languages in America shall have reached such a developed stage that their first efforts will seem obsolete.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE

The emphasis of this book is on learning Hindustani by imitating a native speaker, and hence the type of Hindustani is that used in ordinary cultured conversation. It is very different, indeed, from the literary language even of the newspapers. Although Harley's *Colloquial Hindustani* (London 1943) has a similar aim, those features which characterize the present work and which it shares with the volumes in this series certainly justify its existence. This refers above all to the phonograph records which accompany it, the ample space given to exercise and test materials other than translation from or into English, and to the deductive presentation of the elements of grammar, all centering on the intensive study of a comparatively small body of Basic Sentences. The author did not find all the editors' recommendations easy to follow; in particular, he is not at all sure that the conversational form which was recommended for the Basic Sentences of each Unit has not occasionally impaired the quality of these sentences.

The Hindustani materials are in colloquial Urdu. All were recorded from Mr. Mirza Jaffer of Allahabad and New York City to whose resourcefulness, understanding, and industry a heavy debt is owed. They are romanized in such a way as to bring out in a consistent fashion the distinctive sounds in Mr. Jaffer's pronunciation. Other types of pronunciation—not to mention differences in vocabulary and style—there are, as is natural in a speech community about as large as the United States, and one that is characterized by deep social and religious divisions. It is hoped, nevertheless, that the choice made requires only moderate adjustment on the part of any speaker who wishes to act as a Guide.

No reference is made to writing in either Urdu or Hindi script. The student who has completed the present course will find it easier to learn how to write down and, especially, how to read, say, an ordinary message in one of the two alphabets, if he knows already a stock of words and constructions to guide

him, than if he were faced with problems of alphabet and spelling at an early stage. Those who want to take up reading Hindustani in earnest must at any rate acquire the literary vocabulary and style—a task which lies far beyond our scope. But even so, familiarity with the colloquial background as presented here will prove to be a prerequisite for the study and appreciation of literature.

This book was originally written for a particular purpose—to enable members of the armed forces to study the language without a teacher, during off-duty time. This accounts for some of the limitations in vocabulary and in the treatment of grammar, and for the detailed rules of procedure which future users will have no difficulty in adapting to their purposes. Some of these rules are, however, vital—among them the insistence on small drill groups, on memorizing, and on the presentation of grammatical points only so far as they have come up in the Basic Sentences.

May 1946

The history of the book as set forth in the general foreword and in this preface explains, perhaps, some of its imperfections. Of the far too many shortcomings and errors which are not so easily excused, no one is better aware than the author. It remains for him to thank those who helped him in completing the assigned task. He cannot mention all: aside from Mr. Jaffer, his greatest obligation is to Miss Sonja Bockman who has contributed a great number of exercises and suggestions for conversation, in addition to her steady and intelligent collaboration on the entire project. Miss Eleanor Hill handled the preparation of the difficult typescript with expert skill. This is not the place to acknowledge the assistance received from the editorial staff; yet the author cannot refrain from expressing his gratitude to Dr. J. Milton Cowan and Dr. Norman A. McQuown for the extraordinary amount of patience and labor which they have expended in connection with this particular book.

H. M. H.

INTRODUCTION

1. This Course in spoken Hindustani is designed as a general introduction to the Hindustani language. It contains all the essential grammatical materials for learning to speak everyday Hindustani, and its vocabulary, though small, is built around a number of the most useful common situations and current topics. It is based on the principle that you must HEAR a language if you are to understand it when spoken, and that you must practice speaking it in order to master its sounds and its forms.

A teacher of Hindustani will not always be available for those for whom this book is written. So the course has been made as nearly self-teaching as possible. This manual covers the course completely and requires the use of no other reference material.

2. The Hindustani Language is spoken by about 140 million people in a large section of northern and central India. It is also used as a second language by a huge number of speakers of other languages all over India and Burma (and even other parts of Asia.) This makes Hindustani one of the largest language communities in the world. Hindustani speakers of the Moslem faith often call their language "Urdu," while Hindus refer to it as "Hindi." This distinction becomes more meaning-

ful only in connection with reading and writing and formal literature. Otherwise, the three terms, Hindustani, Urdu, and Hindi mean roughly the same colloquial language, as there is but little difference in the speech of Moslems and Hindus in a given section.

Variations in language are, however, perfectly natural and are found in every language in the world. When these variations are small they are nothing to worry about. All the people you meet in India, who are either native or fairly fluent secondary speakers of Hindustani, will understand the kind of Hindustani presented in this manual, and a great many of them, especially among the Moslem population in the towns of northern India, will speak it exactly as you find it here. Elsewhere people may, however, speak a slightly different kind of Hindustani. If the pronunciation you hear does not quite match what is given to you in this manual or what you hear in this course, IMITATE THE PERSON WITH WHOM YOU ARE SPEAKING. Likewise, do not hesitate to use the gestures which you see, for they are part of the language. Imitate them if you can.

3. To Help You in learning to speak Hindustani, this course makes use of two tools: a native speaker of the language, and this book. The two must be used to-

gether, as neither one is of any use without the other.

This manual has been so organized that it can be used to study by yourself or in a group. If you work in a group and have no regular teacher choose one of the group to act as *Group Leader*.

4. A Native Speaker is the only good source of first-hand knowledge of the pronunciation and usage of any language. The method used in this manual requires the use of a native speaker of Hindustani, preferably a person who can be on hand through the course, or next best the voice of a native speaker recorded on phonograph records which are supplied with this manual. But even when a native speaker is present during the course, the records can always be used for additional study. The native speaker of Hindustani is referred to as the *Guide*; if you can get a Guide, use him as a source of information throughout the course. The Guide's job is to act as a model for you to imitate, and as a check on your pronunciation; it is NOT his business to be a teacher or to "explain" the language to you. The Guide should be, if possible, a person who speaks more or less the type of Hindustani found in this manual, not merely the dialect of a particular region; but he should speak this type of Hindustani naturally and without affectation. He should be neither overeducated nor too uncultured.

5. The Book is divided into five major parts, each containing five learning *units* and one unit devoted to

review. Each unit contains several *sections*, usually the following:

- A. Basic Sentences (with Hints on Pronunciation, in Parts I and II, and Pronunciation Drill, in Parts III, IV, and V)
- B. Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences
- C. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)
- D. Listening In
- E. Conversation
- F. Conversation (Cont.)

These six sections are followed in each learning unit by a *finder list* containing all the new words in the particular unit. At the end of the Manual are included a summary of all word study material as well as supplementary word lists for Units 13 through 30. All the words in the manual are included in two complete vocabularies, Hindustani-English and English-Hindustani.

6. The Basic Sentences in each unit are arranged so as to give you a number of new words and a number of new ways of saying things; first broken up into words or short phrases, and then combined in complete sentences. On the printed page, they are presented in parallel columns, which contain on the left the English equivalent and on the right the Hindustani material.

In the Appendix samples of writing in both conventional scripts will be presented.

7. The Aids to Listening which are given throughout the manual are designed to help you in remembering the Hindustani words AS THEY SOUND. In the Aids to Listening, each Hindustani sound is represented by one letter or group of letters. Every letter (or group of letters) always stands for the same sound. The correspondences between the Aids to Listening and the conventional scripts will be explained in the *Appendix*.

8. The Hints on Pronunciation are given you to help you improve your speech in Hindustani. No language has sounds exactly like those of any other; and in Hindustani you will find some sounds which are quite absent from English, and others which are somewhat but not exactly like English sounds. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* try to hear and imitate more precisely the sounds described for you in these hints.

9. Pronunciation Is Important for a number of reasons: if you expect to be understood when you speak a foreign language, you will have to pronounce it more or less the way the people are used to hearing it. Furthermore, the nearer you get to pronouncing the precise sounds, the easier it will be for your ear to catch the sound as spoken by a native, and the more rapidly you will pick up new words and phrases and make progress in learning the language.

10. The Native Speaker Is Always Right. At times this manual or the phonograph records may show one pronunciation and the particular native speaker who acts as your Guide will pronounce something a little different. Always imitate the pronunciation of your Guide rather than that of the phonograph records or of the *Aids to Listening*.

11. The Word Study sections show you certain uses and combinations of words and phrases studied up to that point; you are taught how to take apart the words and phrases which you hear and how to make new words and phrases on the same model.

12. The Listening In section gives you a number of conversations, anecdotes, or stories, which use the vocabulary and constructions you have learned in each unit and in all those preceding. Its purpose is to give you practice in listening to and understanding the foreign language as you might overhear it in normal conversation among Hindustani-speaking people, and to furnish you with models for your own conversation practice.

13. The Conversation Practice represents the central aim of the course. In order to converse well, you should know everything that you have learned up to that point. When you take part in a conversation, you should do so as easily and naturally as you can. Don't try to bring in new words and phrases that you haven't learned in the material you have been studying; stick to what you have learned and practice it thoroughly.

14. Talking Hindustani. In Speaking Hindustani you should NOT first figure out what you want to say in English and then translate it into Hindustani, word for word. You should apply, instead, the words and expressions you already know to the given situation. If you cannot immediately rattle off a word or expression to fit a particular situation, go on to another, or ask a question, but under no circumstances attempt to compose long and complicated sentences. As soon as you do, you lapse into English speech habits and stop learning Hindustani and Hindustani speech habits.

When people speak to you, they will often use words and expressions you do not know. If you can't guess their meaning, try to find out by asking questions in Hindustani, or by asking them to repeat slowly, or to explain in simpler terms. If you do this you will constantly learn more and will practice the Hindustani you already know in the process.

Your learning of Hindustani will not stop, therefore,

when you have mastered this material. You will, rather, be able to get around among the people, practice what you know, and steadily pick up more and more words and phrases. Try to learn them thoroughly. Carry along a notebook to jot down what you want to remember; you can then review this material from time to time.

You should not wait until you have finished this manual before you start using the language. Start practicing right away. When you have done the first unit, try out the expressions on as many people as possible. When you try out your Hindustani, even at this early stage, make it slide off your tongue as smoothly as possible. Be careful not to slip back into a careless English-like pronunciation. Listen closely to what the person says in response, trying to catch as much as you can. The first few times it may be hard to catch even the words you know, but you will improve rapidly if you keep on practicing every chance you get.

CONTENTS

PART ONE

UNIT	Page	UNIT	Page
1. GETTING AROUND. Greetings and general phrases. Directions. Comment on the <i>Aids to Listening</i> . Asking for things. Food. Price. Time. Numbers. Pronunciation tables.	1	4. SEEING THE SIGHTS. Pronunciation practices. Breathed consonants. Particles. Masculine oblique of nouns. <i>-kaa</i> . Masculine oblique of adjectives. Translations of <i>-kaa</i> . Subjunctive and future. <i>too</i> .	52
2. MEETING PEOPLE. Pronunciation practices for <i>D, T, d, t, R, x, r</i> . "Am," "is," and "are". Personal pronouns. Greetings. "There is". The English article.	20	5. IN THE STORE. Pronunciation practices for nasalization and <i>h</i> . Masculine plurals in <i>-ee. rupae</i> . Polite plural. Oblique pronouns. "My, our, his," etc. Oblique expressions for space and time preceded by <i>-ee. aur</i> .	67
3. WHAT'S YOUR TRADE. Pronunciation practices for short and long vowels and consonants. Adjectives as qualifiers (Gender). Adjectives with the verb "to be". Present tense singular. Masculine plural of adjectives and present tenses. Infinitive and stem. "also, too".	37	6. REVIEW.	80

PART TWO

UNIT	Page	UNIT	Page
7. AN EVENING OUT. Pronunciation practices for vowel sequences and <i>r</i>. Plural of feminine nouns. "was, were." <i>mujh-</i> and <i>ham-</i>. "this, that, his," etc. Polite command.	89	10. SCHOOL. Pronunciation practices on consonant sequences. <i>kuṭh</i> and <i>kooi</i>. <i>nahī</i>. <i>mat</i>. "nothing, nobody," etc. Indirect discourse. Word order.	134
8. FAMILY. Days of the week and additional numbers. Pronunciation practices for vowels, <i>l</i>, <i>k</i>, <i>g</i>, <i>kh</i>, <i>gh</i>, <i>x</i>, <i>ḡ</i>. Oblique plural. <i>naiaa</i>, <i>naii</i>. Irregular forms of <i>lecnaa</i> and <i>deenaa</i>. More about "this, that, his," etc. <i>is liice</i>, etc. Conflicting subjects. "I have, I've got".	103	11. TRAVEL. More numbers. Check on pronunciation. Dialect variants. "you," less polite. Subjunctive of the verb "to be". Loss of short vowel. <i>kisii</i>. Obliques without particles. "when, where." More about subjunctive and future.	148
9. THE WEATHER. Pronunciation practices for <i>oh</i>, <i>ng</i>, etc., word stress, breath groups, emphasis, and pitch. Less polite command. <i>-tak</i>. <i>pah'lee</i>, <i>andar</i>. <i>taraf</i>, <i>turaa</i>. <i>apnaa</i>. <i>rahaa</i>. The English comparative and superlative. "to get, obtain".	119	12. REVIEW.	163

PART ONE

UNIT 1

GETTING AROUND

To the Group Leader: Each *Unit* of this course is divided into six *Sections*. It is suggested that the group spend not less than fifty minutes on each section.

Before you get the group together to work on this first unit, read carefully the following material up to the heading *Useful Words and Phrases* on this page. When the group meets, read the material aloud to them or have some other member of the group do the reading. The students will follow the reading with their books open. Be sure that your Guide, or the phonograph and records, are ready before the group meets for work on Section A. See that the Guide is supplied with a copy of the *Guide's Manual*, which tells him just what he is to do and gives him the Hindustani he is to speak to the group.

You should look through all of the sections of the unit, reading the directions carefully, so that you will have in mind the general plan of the work. Always get clearly in mind the directions for a section before you take that section up in group meeting.

This unit gives you the most immediate and necessary expressions that you will need in meeting people, asking your way, buying things, and counting. The amount of learning and memorizing required for the first unit is considerably greater than that for any later unit. You are given such a large dose at the start

because this unit is meant to be a kind of "language first aid" which gives you enough useful expressions to enable you to make ordinary wants known and to carry on a simple conversation in Hindustani from the very start.

SECTION A—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* which follows, the English equivalent of these words and phrases is given at the left of the page. Opposite, in the right hand column, is a simplified spelling of the Hindustani which will help you in getting the sounds. The *Leader* of the group will first read the *English Equivalent* and pause for the *Guide* to speak the Hindustani. Every member of the group then repeats after the Guide. The Guide

will then say the Hindustani a second time and everybody will repeat after him as before. The Leader will then read the next English equivalent and the Guide and group will follow the procedure indicated.

If no Guide is available, the *phonograph records* provided for the course should be used. When the group is ready, the Leader will begin playing the appropriate record and the group will repeat right after the Hindu-

stani speaker during the silences on the record. The phonograph records can be used with profit even in cases where a Guide is available because they can be heard between meetings of the group, whenever it is convenient to you; they furnish additional practice in hearing Hindustani; you may listen only to those portions which you have found difficult; and the records may be played as often as you wish. In case the speaker on the record has a Hindustani pronunciation different from that of your Guide, use the records only for listening and understanding and not for imitating.

Whether you are working with a Guide or only with the phonograph records, you must repeat each Hindustani word and phrase in a loud, clear voice, trying at all times to imitate the pronunciation as closely as you can. Keep constantly in mind the meaning of the Hindustani you are about to hear, glancing at the English equivalent whenever you need to remind yourself. When you are hearing the Hindustani, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening*. But whenever the written form seems to you to differ from the spoken sound, follow the spoken sound always.

In the first five units, do not attempt under any circumstances to pronounce the Hindustani before you have heard it. You will only make trouble for yourself if you try to guess the pronunciation by "reading" the *Aids to Listening*.

If you are working with a Guide who does not understand English, ask the Leader of your group to demonstrate for you and the Guide what hand signals are to be used to let the Guide know when you want him to read more slowly or to repeat. They are as follows:

- | | |
|---|--------|
| 1. Index finger raised: | BEGIN |
| 2. Hand raised, palm toward the Guide: | STOP |
| 3. Palm down, hand moved slowly in semi-circle: | SLOWER |
| 4. Beckoning with index finger: | REPEAT |
| 5. Hand held palm up and moved quickly up and down: | LOUDER |

Remember that each phrase you say has a real meaning in Hindustani and hence you should always act as though you were really saying something to someone else. You will learn fastest if, when your book is open, you follow these steps:

1. Keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* as you listen to the Hindustani being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard.
3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying.

Begin the words and phrases as soon as your Guide is ready or when the Leader of your group is ready to play the first phonograph record.

To the Group Leader: Give the members of the group a chance to ask questions about the instructions. Make sure that everyone understands just what he is to do. Then have the students go through the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* once with the books open, repeating in unison after the Guide. Following this first practice, read with the group the *Comment on the Aids to Listening* on page 4. Make sure that everyone understands it.

Now go through the list a second time, much as you did before. And finally, go through it a third time, but let the students take turns repeating individually after the Guide—a sentence to a student. Indicate the order in which the repetitions are to go, who is first, who next, and so on. Continue this individual repetition as long as the fifty-minute period permits. Then, just before dismissing the group, read with them the paragraph headed *Check Yourself* on page 5.

Here are some hints that will make the work of the group more effective:

1. Insist that everyone speak up. Don't allow any mumbling! Each member of the group must be able to hear what is being said at all times.
2. Indicate to the Guide that he is to repeat whenever the pronunciation is bad and to keep on repeating until he gets a pronunciation that sounds like Hindustani.
3. Urge everyone to mimic to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.
4. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag at any time. See that everyone is listening, not only to the Guide, but to himself and to the others as they repeat after the Guide.
5. Go through all the work yourself. Repeat with the others and take your turn at the individual repetitions.

1. Useful Words and Phrases

Here is a list of useful words and phrases you will need in Hindustani. YOU SHOULD LEARN THESE BY HEART.

Greetings and General Phrases

NOTE: Words enclosed in brackets [] are not expressed in the Hindustani. Words enclosed in parentheses () help to explain the meaning of the Hindustani but are not necessary in English. Words enclosed in single quotation marks ' ' are literal or word-for-word equivalents.

— ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS —

Record 1A, beginning.

Hello! *also* Good-bye!

How do you do?

Goodbye!

Thank you!

or:

Excuse me!

— AIDS TO LISTENING —

salaam.

aadaab arz.

xudaa haafiz,

šukriiiaa.

meherbaanii,

maaf kiijiiee.

It doesn't matter.	<i>kučh baat nahīī,</i>
Sir!	<i>janaab.</i>
How are you?	<i>aap kaisee hāī.¹</i>
I'm very well, thank you (<i>man speaking</i>).	<i>meherbaanii, māī bahot ačhāa hūū.</i>
Did you understand?	<i>aap samjhee?</i>
Yes.	<i>jii hāū.</i>
I understand.	<i>māī samajhtaa hūū.</i>
No.	<i>jii nahīī.</i>
I don't understand.	<i>māī nahīī samajhtaa.</i>
what	<i>kiaa.</i>
do you say	<i>kah'tee hāī,</i>
What did you say?	<i>kiaa kah'tee hāī,</i>
Please say it again!	<i>phir booliiee.</i>
Please speak very slowly.	<i>dhiiree dhiiree booliiee.</i>
the station	<i>isteeṣan,</i>
where is	<i>kahāū hai.</i>
Where is the station?	<i>isteeṣan kahāū hai.</i>
the hotel	<i>hooṭal.</i>
Where is the hotel?	<i>hooṭal kahāū hai.</i>
the toilet	<i>paaxaanaa,</i>
Where is the toilet?	<i>paaxaanaa kahāū hai.</i>

¹ The record has "I" by mistake. See under 2, on page 5.

It's there.	<i>uahāū hai.</i>
Where is the restaurant?	<i>khaanee-kii dukaan, kahāū hai.</i>
It's here.	<i>iahāū hai.</i>
Please show [me] the hotel.	<i>hooṭal dikhaaiiee.</i>
Directions	
To the right	<i>dah'nii taraf.</i>
To the left	<i>baaīī taraf,</i>
Straight ahead	<i>siidhee,</i>
Please go left.	<i>baaīī taraf jaiiiee.</i>

After you have gone through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following:

2. Comment on the Aids to Listening

The best way to learn any language is to listen to a native speaker of it, and then copy exactly what he says. That is why we ask you to listen carefully to your Guide (or the speaker on the records) and imitate him as exactly as you can. It would be ideal if you could remember everything he says simply by listening and repeating. However, most of us need to have something on paper to remind us of what we have heard. This is what the *Aids to Listening* are meant for. They are simply an attempt to put down systematically on paper the sounds that you hear on the records or that your

Guide will probably say. (Later on you may learn to read regular Hindustani writing; do not be concerned about it now.) Remember, however, that they are only *aids* to listening. The listening itself is still the most important thing; the printed material is just a reminder.

Later on we will discuss at great length the particular sounds for which each letter stands. A wavy line (~) over a letter stands for a sound spoken through the nose. Periods, commas, and question marks are not put in at random. You will soon find out that they show three types of the inflection of the Guide's voice as you hear it on the record or as you are likely to hear it from any speaker.

Now go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with your book open, following the same procedure as before. Repeat each word and phrase, immediately after hearing it, in a loud, clear voice. Let yourself go and say the phrases right out.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once more with your book open, but this time, take turns letting each member of your group repeat individually until everybody has taken part. Keep on the alert. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so with enthusiasm and

try to mimic him as best as you can until he is satisfied with your pronunciation. When you have satisfied him, you can be sure that you are speaking understandable Hindustani. Continue this individual repetition as long as time permits. If you are using only the phonograph records, your Leader will see to it that you repeat and that everyone gets the most out of this individual performance.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you repeat each word and phrase in a loud, clear voice immediately after hearing it?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Hindustani?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION B—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES (Cont.)

Here are other useful words and phrases which you will want to use immediately if you are in a country in which the people speak Hindustani. These are being

given to you as a "language first aid." **LEARN THEM BY HEART.**

In working with this material, follow the same pro-

cedure that you used with the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Section A. After you have gone through the list once, repeating in unison, read the following *Hints on Pronunciation*. Then go through the list a second and a third time, as in Section A.

Record 1B, beginning.

1. Useful Words and Phrases (Cont.)

What is "thank you" in Hindustani?	<i>hindustaanii-mēē, thank you -koo, kīaa kah^{tee} hāī.</i>
What's that?	<i>uoo, kīaa hai.</i>
What's this?	<i>īee, kīaa hai.</i>
This is the restaurant [you] want	<i>īee, khaanee-kīi dukaan hai.</i>
What do you want?	<i>īaah^{tee} hāī, aap, kīaa īaah^{tee} hāī.</i>
to drink	<i>piinaa.</i>
cigarettes	<i>sigreT.</i>
bread	<i>rootīi.</i>
meat	<i>goošt.</i>
rice	<i>īaaual.</i>
milk	<i>duudh.</i>
eggs	<i>andee.</i>
water	<i>paanii,</i>
drinking water	<i>piinee-kaa paanii.</i>
to wash	<i>dhoonaa,</i>
I want	<i>māī īaah^{taa} hūū,</i>

I want to wash	<i>māī dhoonaa īaah^{taa} hūū.</i>
I want food	<i>māī khaanaa īaah^{taa} hūū.</i>

Price

its price ¹	<i>us-kaa daam,</i>
How much is it? ('What is its price?')	<i>us-kaa daam, kīaa hai.</i>
rupee	<i>rupīaa.²</i>
It's one rupee	<i>us-kaa daam, eek rupīaa hai.</i>
Two annas	<i>doo aanee.</i>
Three pice	<i>tiin paisēe.</i>
Money	<i>paisaa.</i>

Time¹

time	<i>uakt,</i>
What time is it?	<i>kīaa uakt hai.</i>
It's eleven o'clock	<i>giāaraa bajee hāī.</i>
At four o'clock	<i>īaar bajee,</i>
when goes	<i>kab jāatii hai.</i>
When does the train leave?	<i>gaarii, kab jāatii hai.</i>
right away	<i>fauran.</i>
It leaves right away	<i>fauran jāatii hai.</i>

¹Not on record.

²One rupee is worth about 30 cents. One rupee has 16 annas, one anna has 4 pice.

today
tomorrow

aa.j.
kal.

Four
Five
Six

kaar,
pāāḥ,
ḥai,

Seven
Eight
Nine

saat,
aath,
nau,

Ten
Eleven
Twelve

das,
giaarac
baaraa

One hundred

sau.

Record 2A, beginning.

what date
What's the date today?

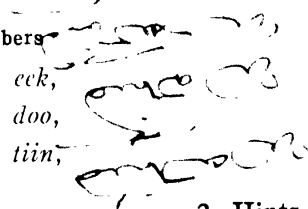
kaun taariix,
aa.j kaun taariix hai,

eight
Today's the eighth

aath.
aa.j, aath taariix hai.

Numbers

One
Two
Three



After you have gone through these *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: First, read through with the group the introductory material and the explanations given in the first part. Then have the Guide read the examples with the group repeating after him. Don't go on to the next part until everyone has a reasonable control over the items of pronunciation that are being taught.

As you have already noticed, Hindustani has a lot of sounds that are just like the ones we use in English; you won't have to learn these, because you already know them. There are also a number of sounds that are almost like our English ones, but still not quite the same. Finally, there are a few sounds that are totally different from anything we have in English.

If you want to speak understandable Hindustani, you

will of course have to learn to say these last two kinds of sounds. The only way to learn them is to listen to the way your Guide (or the speaker on the records) says them, and to imitate him as well as you can. To help you imitate him we shall give you a few *Hints on Pronunciation*. These will cover, in small doses, the sounds that differ completely from those we use in English, as well as the ones that differ only a little.

Before we do that, you will want to have some kind of a general survey of all the sounds which you have met so far. This is what the *Hints on Pronunciation* in this first unit will consist of.

One thing that makes Hindustani sound very different from English is the matter of STRESS, or loudness. In English we usually stress the accented syllable of a word very heavily; that is, we force out the breath from our lungs with much more strength. In Hindustani, stress is not very important, and no syllable receives as much emphasis as in English. What is even more important, no syllable of a Hindustani word is ever slurred, as are the unaccented syllables in English. Later on you will find out which syllables do have a slightly (but only very slightly) heavier stress. The important thing right now is to make the air come out in an even flow of breath. PRONOUNCE ALL SYLLABLES CLEARLY!

While you must thus forget the English speech habit of distinguishing strong from weak stress, you will have to learn how to make another distinction which is more important in Hindustani than in English, namely, LENGTH. Hindustani has two sets of five vowels each, one extremely short, the other rather long. The long ones will be spelled with double characters (*aa, ee, ii, oo, uu.*) The short ones will be spelled with simple characters (*a, e, i, o, u.*) Make an effort to pronounce them VERY, very short.

Let us now start on our survey of sounds. Those sounds which need more explanation will be taken up in the later *Hints on Pronunciation*.

In the *Aids to Listening*, letters are used as follows:

AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	EXAMPLES
<i>a</i>	a very short sound, close to that of <i>u</i> in "but". Before <i>h'</i> : a sound close to that of <i>a</i> in "apt"	<i>das</i> 'ten' <i>dah'nii taraf</i> 'to the left'
<i>e</i>	a very short sound, close to that of <i>e</i> in "net".	<i>meherbaanii</i> 'thank you'
<i>i</i>	a very short sound, close to that of <i>i</i> in "lip". Before another vowel this sounds almost like <i>y</i> in "yard".	<i>sigreT</i> 'cigarettes' <i>kiaa</i> 'what'
<i>o</i>	a sound close to that of <i>au</i> in "caught", but much shorter	<i>bahot</i> 'much, very'
<i>u</i>	a very short sound close to <i>u</i> in "push". Before another vowel this sounds almost like <i>w</i> in "wash."	<i>us-kaa</i> 'its' <i>uahāū</i> 'there'

The long vowels we spell:

<i>aa</i>	a sound close to that of <i>a</i> in "calm"	<i>ḡaar</i> 'four'
<i>ee</i>	a sound close to a very long <i>e</i> as in "red" or to <i>ay</i> in "day" (but without the <i>y</i> -glide we usually add in pronouncing that <i>ay</i>)	<i>eek</i> 'one'

<i>ii</i>	a sound close to <i>ee</i> in "freeze"	<i>tiin</i>	'three'
<i>oo</i>	a sound close to <i>o</i> in "phone" (but without the <i>w</i> -glide at the end)	<i>rootii</i>	'bread'
<i>uu</i>	a sound close to <i>oo</i> in "boom"	<i>duudh</i>	'milk'

Long vowels may take twice as much time to pronounce as do short ones, except when they come at the end of words of more than one syllable. In that particular case, they are not very long in duration, but otherwise sound quite like the ones written *aa*, *ee*, *ii*, *oo*, *uu* in the preceding list. Examples are: *aa* in *dhoonaa* 'to wash', *ee* in *andee* 'eggs', *ii* in *rootii* 'bread.'

There are two vowel combinations, spelled:

<i>ai</i>	starts with something like <i>a</i> in "apt" and blends into <i>e</i> as in "end". (Sometimes it sounds just like a rather long <i>a</i> as in "sad")	<i>paisaa</i>	'money'
<i>au</i>	starts in with something like <i>u</i> in "but" and blends into something like a broad pronunciation of <i>aw</i> as in "sawed". (Sometimes the whole sound is almost like a broad pronunciation of <i>aw</i> in "sawed")	<i>fauran</i>	'right away'

All these vowels and vowel combinations may also be pronounced through the nose. In this case we write a

wavy line (˜) over the vowel letter or letters. Examples are: *pāāč* 'five', *nahī* 'not', *māī čaah'taa hūū* 'I want.'

The consonant sounds spelled *b*, *f*, *j*, *m*, *n*, *z* in the *Aids to Listening* are just like the English sounds commonly spelled with those same letters. *g* as in *goošt* 'meat' is always like the 'hard' *g* as in *get* (not like in *gentle*); *s* as in *saat* "seven" is always like the *s* in "lease" (not like in "ease" or "sugar" or "confusion".)

Also note that we spell:

<i>š</i>	for the sound of <i>sh</i> in "shoe"	<i>šukriiaa</i>	'thank you'
----------	--------------------------------------	-----------------	-------------

The other consonant sounds of Hindustani are less like English sounds. THEY WILL BE DISCUSSED IN DETAIL LATER. Here is a survey chart:

<i>č</i>	a sound close to <i>tch</i> in "patches", with the tip of tongue lowered, and without any breath following it.	<i>čaar</i>	'four'
<i>d</i>	a <i>d</i> pronounced with the tip of the tongue pressed forward against the teeth.	<i>das</i>	'ten'
<i>D</i>	a sound close to the English <i>d</i> , pronounced with the tip of the tongue bent back to the roof of the mouth.	<i>andee</i>	'eggs'

<i>h</i>	always a strong breathing. Be sure to pronounce <i>ĕh</i> , <i>dh</i> etc. as <i>ĕ+h</i> , <i>d+h</i> , etc.	<i>iahāā</i> 'here' <i>ĕhai</i> 'six' <i>dhoonaa</i> 'to wash'	'th-r-ree' or that children sometimes use to imitate the sound of a motor.	
<i>h'</i>	an <i>h</i> with a whispered <i>e</i> . An <i>a</i> preceding <i>h'</i> sounds about like the English <i>a</i> in "apt".	<i>dah'nii taraf</i> 'to the right'	R a very short tap of the tongue toward the roof of the mouth back at the point where the <i>D</i> and <i>T</i> are made. It resembles the sound some people make for <i>tt</i> in "butter".	<i>gaakii</i> 'train'
<i>j</i>	a sound close to <i>j</i> in "jail", but with the tip of the tongue lowered.	<i>janaab</i> 'sir'		
<i>k</i>	a sound close to that of <i>k</i> in "striking" without any breath following it.	<i>kal</i> 'tomorrow'	t a <i>t</i> without any breath following, made with the tip of the tongue pressed forward against the teeth.	<i>tiin</i> 'three'
<i>k'</i>	a <i>k</i> made very far back in the throat, with no breath following. (If your Guide uses an ordinary <i>k</i> here as many speakers do, follow him, paying no attention to the dot.)	<i>uakt</i> 'time'	T a <i>t</i> -sound without any breath following, made with the tip of the tongue bent back towards the roof of the mouth.	<i>rootii</i> 'bread'
<i>l</i>	a 'clear' <i>l</i> , such as many people pronounce in "million", as against the 'thick' <i>l</i> in 'milk'.	<i>kal</i> 'tomorrow'	x a sound made very far back in the throat, a little like the noise some people make when clearing their throats.	<i>xudaa haafiz</i> 'good-bye'
<i>p</i>	a sound close to that of <i>p</i> in "upper", without any breath following.	<i>paanii</i> 'water'		
<i>r</i>	is a trill like the one the telephone operator uses in saying	<i>rupiaa</i> 'rupee'		

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you apply what you learned about the vowel

sounds and about stress in *Hints on Pronunciation*?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Hindustani?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

If your group has time for outside assignments, sections marked *Individual Study* may be done between meetings of the group. Otherwise use them as independent study during a group meeting.

1. Covering the English (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the English. Read the Hindustani

aloud. Keep your voice down if you are working with the rest of the group. Follow your Guide's pronunciation as nearly as you can remember, and test yourself to see if you can recall the meaning of each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are not sure about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the English and find their meaning. Repeat this procedure at least three times or until you are satisfied that you know every expression.

2. Review of Useful Words and Phrases

To the Group Leader: Read again for your information the numbered suggestions just preceding *Useful Words and Phrases* on page 3. Your Guide has been directed in his manual to pay particular attention to the correct pronunciation of the sounds. He may ask members of the group to repeat words or phrases a good many times in an effort to get a pronunciation that is more nearly correct. See that they listen closely, that they repeat promptly and loud enough so that everyone can hear them, and that they imitate the Guide to the last detail.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B twice. The first time have the members of the group repeat individually after the Guide with books open. The second time, have them close their books. The Guide will give each Hindustani expression twice as before. Let the students take turns giving the English equivalent the first time they hear the Guide speak the Hindustani and repeating the Hindustani as usual the second time. This will help them to check on the meaning of all Hindustani expressions in *Useful Words and Phrases*.

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. The first time you go through the list, take turns repeating the Hindustani after the Guide. Keep your book open, and get all the help you can from the *Aids to Listening*. Pay particular attention to what you have learned about the pronunciation of the vowels. Make every effort to satisfy your Guide with your pronunciation.

The second time you go through the list, check up on

the meaning of the Hindustani. Keep your books closed and take turns giving the English equivalent the first time you hear the Hindustani expression and repeating the Hindustani as usual the second time. If you have any trouble with the English, you should find time for more individual study of the *Useful Words and Phrases*, covering the English and checking up on the meaning when you read the Hindustani aloud.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Listening In

To the Group Leader: The conversations which appear in this section will be read to the group by the Guide or played on the phonograph records. English equivalents are omitted from the *Listening In* material so that students can get practice in understanding spoken Hindustani which uses the vocabulary they know. Meaning, therefore, is to be emphasized.

The first time you go through the conversations, have the Guide repeat a conversation, if necessary to help clear up the meaning, before you go on to the next conversation. If you have no Guide, lift the needle of the phonograph at the end of each conversation and let the students discuss the meaning of any sentences that are not understood.

Go through the conversations a second time without stopping. Pay about equal attention to pronunciation and meaning.

Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Give everyone a chance. Suggest that the actors actually take the parts, stand up and move around, sit at a table in the restaurant, behind the window at the station, etc. Keep it moving. Get everyone to speak up! Take a part yourself.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversation and repeat after him. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Hindustani immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check

up on the meaning of what you have heard and said. Ask someone in the group to give you the English equivalent of any expression you do not understand. A large number of the words and expressions you have had in *Useful Words and Phrases* occur in the following conversations.

Record 2A, after 1st spiral.

1. Asking for information

Jim: *salaam.*

Das: *aadaab arz janaab.*

Jim: *isteešan, kahāḥ hai.*

Das: *baaī taraf.*

Jim: *maaf kiijiiee.
māī nahīī samajhtaa.
phir booliiee.*

Das: *baaī taraf jaaīiee.
aap samjhee?*

Jim: *jii hāḥ.
māī samajhtaa hūḥ.
šukriīaa.*

Das: *kuḥ baat nahīī,
salaam janaab.*

Jim: *xudaa haafiz.*

Record 2A, after 2nd spiral.

2. In the station

Jim¹: *maaf kiijiiee janaab.
kiaa uakt hai.*

Das: *giaaraa bajee hāī.*

Jim: *gaakii, kab jaatii hai.*

¹ Not on record.

Das: *čaar bajee.*

Jim: *kiaa kah'tee hāī.
māī nahīī samajhtaa.
dhiirce dhiiree booliiee janaab;*

Das: *čaar bajee. aap samjhee?
eck, doo, tiin, čaar bajee.*

Jim: *jii hāḥ.
mcherbaanii.
hootal kahāḥ hai janaab.*

Record 2B, beginning.

Das: *phir booliiee.*

Jim: *hootal dikhaaiiee.*

Das: *uahāḥ hai.*

Jim: *hootal kahāḥ hai.*

Das: *dah'niī taraf.*

Jim: *šukriīaa janaab.*

Record 2B, after 1st spiral.

3. At the hotel

Jim: *iee kiaa hai.*

Das: *iee khaanee-kii dukaan hai janaab,
aap kiaa čaah'tee hāī.*

Jim: *māī khaanaa čaah'taa hūḥ.*

Das: *aap kiaa khaanaa čaah'tee hāī.*

Jim: *rootii, andee, duudh.*
uskaa daam kiaa hai.

Das: *uskaa daam eek rupiaa hai.*

Jim: *māi dhoonaa čaah'taa hūū.*
paaxaanaa kahāū hai.

Das: *iahāū hai janaab,*
siidhee,

Jim: *meherbaanii,*

Record 2B, after 2nd spiral.

4. Meeting a friend

Jim: *aadaab arz janaab.*
aap kaisee hāi.

Das: *meherbaanii, māi bahot ačhaa hūū.*
aap kiaa čaah'tee hāi.

Jim: *kiaa kah'tee hāi.*
phir booliiee janaab,

Das: *aap kiaa čaah'tee hāi.*
aap samjhee?

Jim: *jii nahīi janaab;*
māi nahīi samajhtaa.
dhiiree dhiiree booliiee.

Das: *kučh baat nahīi,*
xudaa haafiz janaab,

Jim: *xudaa haafiz.*

2. Check Yourself

Is there any expression in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, find the meaning of it or ask other members of your group before you proceed. If no one knows, refer to the *Useful Words and Phrases*.

Go through the conversations once more following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and be sure to keep in mind the English equivalent of everything you are saying in Hindustani.

Finally go through the conversations again but this time take turns. The Leader will assign parts and the exercise is to continue at least until everyone has had a chance to speak one of the parts. Keep this going as long as you have time. When your turn comes, speak clearly and with enthusiasm. Put yourself in the situation and let yourself go. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so until he is satisfied with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the Hindustani. Read the English

silently and test yourself to see if you can speak the Hindustani for each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are uncertain about and after you have gone

through the whole list, uncover the Hindustani and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Hindustani readily for all the expressions. To make sure of

this, pick out expressions at random and see if you can speak out the Hindustani quickly. Speak the Hindustani aloud and try to imitate your Guide's pronunciation as well as you can remember it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Read to the group the English equivalent of the Hindustani expressions. Call on different students not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Hindustani for the English. For instance, say to A, "*hindustaanii-mēe* Where-is-the-hotel?-*koo kīaa kah'tee hāi.*" The students are to respond with their books closed. The Guide will indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Hindustani expression that is wrong, or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the expression correctly. Any group member who has difficulty in giving the correct Hindustani should be told to review the *Useful Words and Phrases* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not spend any time talking about the *why* of the Hindustani; stick to the *how*.

There are two precautions which the Leader must observe in all exercises of this sort and in the conversation practice throughout the course. Be sure that everyone understands them. They are as follows:

1. Every Hindustani expression must be given smoothly and completely before the student's performance can be considered satisfactory. If there is an error in the first attempt, ask the student to give the expression over again in complete form. If he fumbles badly, turn to someone else.
2. Everyone must speak loud enough, so that all can hear. Every student should be encouraged to call out "Louder, please!" if he can't hear. Check on this occasionally by pointing to the student who is listening to someone else's Hindustani, and ask "What did he say?"

If you do not observe these precautions, much time and effort may be wasted in group meetings.

In this section you are going to have your first chance to engage in conversation in Hindustani. This, of course, is the most useful part of the entire unit, and the part you should do with the greatest amount of pep and realism. Do it half-heartedly and you lose most of the value of the unit. Do it earnestly and enthusiastically and you will find that you can readily say a great num-

ber of things in Hindustani, fluently and correctly. Read the instructions carefully, get everything you are to do straight in your mind, and then plunge in.

In order to fix in your mind the expressions you will need in the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Hindustani you have learned. By now you should not have to grope for it. The Leader of the group

will ask you to supply in turn the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Useful Words and Phrases*. If you have done a thorough job of recalling the Hindustani when you are looking only at the English equivalents, as suggested in Section E, you will have no difficulty in responding

promptly and smoothly when you hear the English. Your Guide will let you know if your Hindustani expressions are not correct. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should be ready to correct faulty expressions.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Read the following directions with the class. Encourage the students to strike out for themselves. Spend all the time you can on free conversation practice in an effort to get to the point where students can speak easily and smoothly with a minimum of *ums* and *ers*.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to take turns in pairs, carrying on the following conversations. The two persons who are talking together should stand up and act out their parts, speaking as smoothly and naturally as possible. Make it real and get some fun out of it. The Guide will help you if your Hindustani is wrong or if your pronunciation is bad. The Leader will prompt you if you are not sure what comes next in your part.

1. Getting Directions

A approaches a stranger, B, and asks him for information.

1. A apologizes for speaking to B and asks him where there is (a) a restaurant (b) a station or (c) a hotel.
2. B gives A directions (a) to the right (b) to the left or (c) straight ahead.

3. A apologizes again, explains that he does not understand, and asks B if he will please speak slowly.
4. B repeats slowly and clearly and asks A if he understands.
5. A says that he does understand and thanks B.
6. B says that it doesn't matter.
7. A again thanks B and says goodbye.
8. B says goodbye.

2. At a Restaurant

C sits down at a table in a restaurant and is waited on by D.

1. D says good morning to C and asks how C is.
2. C says he is well, thanks, and asks after D's health.

3. D is also well and asks what C wants.
4. C orders a meal—meat, eggs, rice, bread, water, milk—whatever he would like.
5. After eating, C asks how much it is.
6. D tells C that it is one rupee.
7. C pays, saying here it is.
8. D thanks C.

9. C says goodbye to D.
10. D says goodbye to C.

If it is so desired, particularly when the group is too large to give everybody a chance to participate in the conversation, the exercise may be continued for longer than the time indicated above. It is also good practice to give people who are having difficulties a second trial.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: You can tell from the work that you did on conversation in Section E, whether or not the group needs to spend more time in preparing for successful conversation. If necessary, spend the first part of this section in individual study, having members of the group say the Hindustani of the *Useful Words and Phrases* when they have the English expression covered. Check up on their vocabulary as in Section E. Then continue the work with conversation which you started in Section E.

In this section you are to continue taking part in conversation. If the work didn't go well in Section E, take time to go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with the English covered and to give the Hindustani of the English expressions as your Leader asks for it.

Put everything you can into the conversations. Act your part; don't hesitate to talk for fear of making a mistake. You'll make plenty of mistakes at first, but the important thing is to practice talking. You can't correct an error until you have made it.

Try out your Hindustani whenever you get a chance. Don't wait for meetings of the group to practice what you have learned. Pair off between meetings and see what you can do with Hindustani greetings and conversation. When you are alone, run over the list of Hindustani expressions you know. Review them in your mind. Try saying them. See how much you can improve your pronunciation and control of the language in whatever time you can find between meetings of the group. Make this a regular practice throughout the course.

FINDER LIST

This is a complete alphabetical list of all the words and expressions used in this unit. This list is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit.

D is alphabetized after *d*, *k* after *k*, *R* after *r*, *š* after *s*, and *T* after *t*.

The “(-*ii*)” after certain Hindustani words will be explained in a later unit.

<i>aadaab arz</i>	<i>a</i>	how do you do	<i>dhiiree dhiiree</i>	<i>e</i>	very slowly
<i>aaĵ</i>		today	<i>dhoonaa</i>		to wash
<i>aanee</i>		annas	<i>dikhaaiiee</i>		please show
<i>aap</i>		you	<i>doo</i>		two
<i>aaṭh</i>		eight	<i>duudh</i>		milk
<i>aġġhaa</i>		good, well			
<i>anDee</i>		eggs			
<i>baaīī taraf</i>	<i>b</i>	to the left	<i>eeċ</i>	<i>f</i>	one
<i>baaraa</i>		twelve	<i>fauran</i>		right away
<i>baat (-ii)</i>		matter	<i>gaarii (-ii)</i>	<i>g</i>	train
<i>bahot</i>		very	<i>giaaraa</i>		eleven
<i>bajee</i>		. . . o'clock	<i>goošl</i>		meat
<i>booliiee</i>		please speak		<i>h</i>	
<i>ġaah*taa hūū</i>	<i>ġ</i>	[I] want	<i>hāā</i>		yes
<i>ġaah*tee hāī</i>		[you] want	<i>hai</i>		is, there is
<i>ġaar</i>		four	<i>hāī</i>		are, there are
<i>ġaauaġ</i>		rice	<i>hindustaanii</i>		Hindustani
<i>ġhai</i>		six	<i>hooṭal</i>		hotel
			<i>hūū</i>		am
<i>daam</i>	<i>d</i>	price		<i>i</i>	
<i>dah*nii taraf</i>		to the right	<i>iahāā</i>		here
<i>das</i>		ten	<i>iee</i>		this
			<i>isṬeešan</i>		station
				<i>j</i>	
			<i>jaaiiee</i>		please go
			<i>jaatii hai</i>		[it] goes
			<i>janaab</i>		Sir

<i>jii hāā</i>		yes	<i>paisee</i>		pice (coins)
<i>jii nahīī</i>		no	<i>phir</i>		again
	<i>k</i>		<i>piinaa</i>		to drink
<i>kaa</i>		of	<i>piinee-kaa paanii</i>		drinking water
<i>kaḥ</i>		when		<i>r</i>	
<i>kaḥāā</i>		where	<i>rootīī (-ii)</i>		bread
<i>kaḥ'tee hāī</i>		[you] say	<i>rupiaa</i>		rupee (monetary unit)
<i>kaisee</i>		how		<i>s</i>	
<i>kal</i>		tomorrow	<i>saat</i>		seven
<i>kaun</i>		which	<i>salaam</i>		good morning, good eve-
<i>khaanaa</i>		food			ning, hello, goodbye
<i>khaanee-kīī dukaan (-ii)</i>		restaurant	<i>samajhtaa hūū</i>		I understand
<i>kīaa</i>		what	<i>nahīī samajhtaa</i>		[I] don't understand
<i>koo</i>		to	<i>samjhee</i>		[you] understood
<i>kučḥ</i>		any	<i>sau</i>		one hundred
<i>kučḥ baat nahīī</i>		it doesn't matter	<i>sigreṭ</i>		cigarettes
	<i>m</i>		<i>siidhee</i>		straight ahead
<i>mauf kīījīee</i>		excuse me		<i>ṣ</i>	
<i>māī</i>		I	<i>ṣukriiaa</i>		thank you
<i>mēē</i>		in		<i>t</i>	
<i>meharbaanii</i>		thank you	<i>taariix (-ii)</i>		date
	<i>n</i>		<i>taraf</i>		direction
<i>nahīī</i>		not, is not, am not, are not	<i>tiin</i>		three
<i>nau</i>		nine		<i>u</i>	
	<i>p</i>		<i>uahāā</i>		there
<i>pāāč</i>		five	<i>uaḳt</i>		time
<i>paanii</i>		water	<i>uoo</i>		that
<i>paaxaanaa</i>		toilet	<i>us-kaa</i>		its
<i>paīsaa</i>		money	<i>xudaa haafiz</i>	<i>x</i>	goodbye

MEETING PEOPLE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Adopt the following steps as a standard practice in conducting this course:

1. Before each meeting of the group, be sure to read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions covering those sections of a unit which you expect to take up in the group meeting.
2. Before each group meeting, see that the Guide is available with his *Guide's Manual* or that phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they begin it. Let one member of the group read these instructions aloud while the others follow the reading in their books.
4. Take time, following the reading of all instructions, to make sure that everyone understands exactly what he is to do.

In Section A of Unit 2 follow the same procedure as that outlined for *Useful Words and Phrases* of Section A in Unit 1. Go through the *Basic Sentences* once with everyone repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph record. Then take up the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them once more, with repetitions in unison after the Guide. Pay particular attention to those items of pronunciation you have been working on. Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* a third time with solo repetition. The Guide will call for as many repetitions as may be necessary to get a pronunciation that sounds to him like Hindustani.

Make everyone speak loudly and clearly. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag.

Begin this section by listening, in the manner already outlined in Section A of the preceding unit, to the *Basic Sentences* which follow. Be sure to keep in mind the meaning of the Hindustani by reading silently the English equivalent. As you listen to the Hindustani, keep your eye on the *Aids to Listening*. This will help you imitate accurately the pronunciation you are hearing. Repeat each word and phrase loudly and clearly right after you hear it. As you pronounce the Hindustani, do so as though you really meant what you are saying. Do not forget that these words and phrases convey a real

meaning and it is up to you to say them as though you were actually using them. Go through the sentences in unison and with your book open.

The *Basic Sentences* are set up as conversations so that you may hear and speak the Hindustani as you would hear and speak it if you were talking with Indians.

Although numerous characters are introduced in these *Basic Sentences*, it is not important for you to try to keep in mind just who they are or their relationship to one another. You are concerned rather with **WHAT** they say and **HOW** they say it.

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. Das and Mr. Potter meet Mr. Das's friend, Mr. Ram Lal.

— ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS —

Record 3A, beginning.

Mr. Ram Lal:
How do you do, sir?
the gentleman
who
Who is this gentleman?

Mr. Das:
with him
please meet
I'd like you to meet him.

— AIDS TO LISTENING —

aadaab arz janaab.
saaheb,
kaun,
iee saahab kaun hāī.

in-see,
miliiee,
in-see miliiee.

his
the name
His name is Mr. Potter.

Mr. Ram Lal:
the friend
Does your friend speak
Hindustani?

Mr. Das:
but
He understands it, but
please speak [very]
slowly.

Mr. Ram Lal:
Where are you from?

Mr. Potter:
I'm from America.

Mr. Ram Lal:
India
you like
Do you like India?

Mr. Potter:
Yes, I like it a lot.

Mr. Ram Lal:
for a meal

in-kaa,
naam,
in-kaa naam Mr. Potter
hai.

doost,
kiaa aap-kee doost, hindu
staaniī boollee hāī?

leekin,
samajhlee hāī. leekin
dhiiree booliiee.

aap kahāā-see hāī?

māī amriikaa-see hūū.

hindustaan,
aap pasand kartee hāī,
kiaa aap, hindustaan,
pasand kartee hāī?

jii hūū. māī bahot pasand
kartaa hūū.

khaanee-kee liiee,

you can come
Can you come for dinner?

Mr. Potter:
[Yes,] thank you [very
much]
When should I come?

Mr. Ram Lal:
by all means
Today, by all means.
early
Please be sure to come
early.

all right
Is seven o'clock all right?

Mr. Potter:
That's fine.

Record 3B, beginning.

[At Mr. Ram Lal's House:]¹

Mr. Potter:
Hello.

Servant:
Good evening, sir.

Mr. Potter:
Is Mr. Ram Lal in?

¹ Not recorded.

aap aa saktee hāī,
kiaa aap, khaanee kee liiee,
aa saktee hāī?

meherbaanii,
māī kab aaūū.

zaruur.
aaj zaruur aaiiee.
jaldii,
jaldii zaruur aaiiee.

thiik,
kiaa saat bajee Thiik hai?
ačhaa.

salaam.

salaam saaheb.

kiaa raam laal hāī?

Servant:
inside
I'll see. (lit. I look inside)
the little while
please wait
Please wait just a moment.
to Ram Lal
a little
the work
Mr. Ram Lal's busy for a
minute.

[then
O.K. I'll wait, (then).
anything *or* something
Is there anything I can
do for you?

Mr. Potter:
the trouble
don't do
(No.) don't bother.
Mr. Ram Lal comes in.

Mr. Ram Lal:
happy
How do you do, sir. I'm
very delighted.

¹ The record has: *Thoorii deer, Thairiiee.*

² Not on record.

andar,
māī andar deekhtaa hūū.
thoorii deer,
Thairiiee.
thoorii deer Thairiiee.¹
raam laal-koo,
thookaa,
kaam,
raam laal-koo, thooraa
kaam hai.
too²
Thiik. too Thairūū-gaa.
kučh
kiaa, aap-kee liiee, kučh
kar saktaa hūū?

takliif.
mat-karoo,
takliif mat-karoo.

xuš,
aadaab arz janaab. māī
bahot xuš hūū.

my wife
my boys
This is my wife, these are
my boys.

mecrii biuii,
mercee larkee,
iee meerii biuii hai, iee
meeree larkee hāi.

Mr. Potter:
with you
having met
Pleased to meet you.

aap-see,
mil-kar,
māi aap-see mil-kar, bahot
xuś hūū.

Record 4A, beginning.

Mr. Ram Lal:
the members of the
family
in America
Is your family in America?

baal-baččee.

amriikaa-mēē,
kiaa aap-kee baal-baččee,
amriikaa-mēē hāi?

Mr. Potter:
the son
the college

beeṭaa.
kaaliḷ.

he studies
Yes, one of my sons stud-
ies in college there.

paṛhṭaa hai.
jii hāā. eek meeraa beeṭaa,
kaaliḷ-mēē, paṛhṭaa
hai.

[They have dinner and talk for some time afterwards.¹]

a period of time
is getting to be
It's getting late.

deer.
hootii hai.
deer hootii hai.

I really must go.

māi jaanaa ēaahṭaa hūū.

Mr. Potter and Mr. Ram Lal:
Good-bye.

xudaa haafiz,

Mr. Ram Lal:
the house
This house is yours. Please
come again.

ghar,
iee aap-kaa ghar hai, phir
aaiiee.

¹ Not recorded.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second
time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The explanations preceding each *Practice* should be read by the group and discussed before the Practice is attempted. The practice for *Hints on Pronunciation* is in the Guide's Manual and on the phonograph records. Follow the same procedure in working with the practice material that you have followed with the *Basic Sentences*. Go through as many times as may be necessary to give each member of the group reasonable control of the item of pronunciation that is being taught. Have the group repeat after the Guide, first in unison, then individually.

1. *D, T, d, t.* Compare the sounds we spell *D* and *T* with the ones spelled *d* and *t*. Both are similar to

English "d"s and "t"s; in fact, ordinary English "d"s and "t"s are made at a point in the mouth which is

between the places where Hindustani speakers make their *d*, *t* and their *ḍ*, *ṭ*. For *d* and *t* put the tip of your tongue against or even slightly between your TEETH; for *ḍ*, *ṭ* curl the tip of the tongue slightly upward so that it presses firmly against the roof of the mouth behind the teeth. This distinction is as important in Hindustani as is the distinction between any two consonants sounds, as between “t” and “p” in English.

If you observe your own English “d”s and “t”s and compare them with the preceding description, you will agree that the English sounds are more like *ḍ*, *ṭ* (back) than like *d*, *t* (teeth). That is why English words such as ‘station’, ‘hotel’, when used by Hindustani speakers, are pronounced as *isteeṣan*, *hootal*. Listen, however to the slight difference, and pronounce the Hindustani version of these English words just as the Guide or the speaker on the record says them.

Some persons, by the way, do occasionally pronounce something like Hindustani ‘teeth’ *d*’s and *t*’s, namely, before *th* in ‘width’, ‘at that’.

Listen to the different sound in *baat* ‘matter’ and *aaṭh* ‘eight’ (disregarding for the moment the final *h*). Not only is the *t* different from the *ṭ*, but the *aa*-vowels preceding them have a different quality. The *aa* in *aaṭh* sounds almost like the English “ar” in ‘art’, as some people pronounce it. If the *ṭ* is pronounced correctly, the *aa*-sound will automatically sound right, too.

Record 4A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 1

<i>baat</i>	‘the matter’
<i>aaṭh</i>	‘eight’
<i>jaatīi hai</i>	‘it goes’
<i>hootal</i>	‘the hotel’
<i>andar</i>	‘inside’
<i>anDee</i>	‘eggs’

2. The *ṛ*-sound. The sound of *ṛ* is something like an extremely short *ḍ*. It is not difficult to make if you practise the following: first, the tongue is bent back; then it is rapidly flapped forward, touching for a brief moment the roof of the mouth, and ending up flat at the bottom of the mouth. It is important that the contact between tongue and roof of the mouth should be a mere tap, without stopping the movement of the tongue. The resulting sound is completely different from the American English “r”. Now listen to the way your Guide says *ṛ* in the following examples, and repeat after him.

Record 4A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 2

<i>gaarīi</i>	‘the train’
<i>laarkīi</i>	‘the girl’
<i>laṛkee</i>	‘the boys’
<i>paṛhṭaa hai</i>	‘he studies’

3. The *x*-sound. This sound is almost exactly like the noise some people make when they clear their throats of phlegm before they are going to spit. Listen to the way your Guide says the sound in the following examples, and repeat right after him:

Record 4A, after 3rd spiral.

Practice 3

<i>xudaa haafiz</i>	'Good-bye'
* <i>meeraa xiaal hai</i>	'I think'
* <i>xuubsuurat</i>	'beautiful'

4. The *r*-sound. Neither the Hindustani *ṛ* (which is really closer to a *ḍ*-sound), nor the *r* are anything like the American English "r". You must train yourselves never to use an American *r* while speaking Hindustani. The Hindustani sound here spelled *r* is trilled, like the "rrr" that children say in imitating the sound of a motor or telephone bell. Do not confuse *ṛ* and *r*. Listen to your Guide when he says the following examples, and repeat right after him:

Record 4A, after 4th spiral.

Practice 4

<i>dhiiree</i>	'slowly'
<i>andar</i>	'inside'
<i>kartii hai</i>	'she does'

If you are uncertain about any of the points of pro-

*These words are introduced at this point for pronunciation practice only.

nunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases with which you are having trouble, and try to improve your pronunciation. Remember that these notes are only approximate and are at best an imperfect description of the sounds.

When you are satisfied that you can pronounce fairly well all the sounds, go through the *Basic Sentences* once more in unison and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eye on the *Aids to Listening*, and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally go through the *Basic Sentences* again, this time taking turns. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide, and make sure that your pronunciation satisfied him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice with your book open and then at least once with your book closed?

Did you repeat each word and phrase immediately after hearing it in a loud, clear voice?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Hindustani?

If your Guide asked you to repeat, did you do so with enthusiasm and as many times as necessary until he was satisfied with what you were saying?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

If your group has time for outside assignments, do the *Word Study* between meetings of the group. Otherwise make it independent study in the group meeting.

In this section we take up some of the words and expressions you have just learned and examine them to see how the language is built. First read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Hindustani. Then read the comment which follows each list. This should make clear to you just how the words function and how they are put together. If there are any points that are not clear to you, make note of them and ask other members of the group about them. Follow the same procedure with each list and each comment.

A. THE WORDS FOR “AM”, “IS”, AND “ARE”

Words like “be”, “go”, “do”, “learn” are called **VERBS** in English. We shall use the same term for their Hindustani equivalents.

māi amriikaa-see hūū ‘I AM from America’

māi xuš hūū ‘I AM happy’

iee khaanee-kii dukaan hai ‘this IS a restaurant’

uoo kīaa hai ‘what IS that?’

iee meeree larkee hāi ‘these ARE my boys’

kīaa aap-kee baal-baččee amriikaa mēē hāi? ‘ARE the members of your family in America?’

aap kahāū-see hāi ‘where ARE you from?’

The words at the end of the above sentences are the most common verb forms in Hindustani, namely the words for “am”: *hūū*;

“is”: *hai*;

“are”: *hāi*.

Note that these words, like most other Hindustani verb forms come at the end of the sentence, no matter if you make a statement or ask a question.

The expressions with *hāi* will be called **PLURAL**; those with *hūū* and *hai*, **SINGULAR**.

B. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Now let us go back to the examples under A.

Such words as: *māi* ‘I’

iee ‘this, these’

uoo ‘that, those’,

will be called **PRONOUNS**. In conversation you will find that these particular pronouns are often omitted. In other words, you will come across sentences like *xuš hūū* ‘I am glad,’ *kahāū-see hāi* ‘where are you from?’

iee ‘this, these’ and *uoo* ‘that, those’ often correspond to a mere ‘he, she, it, they’ in English. *iee*, however,

will refer to things or persons immediately present, or about to be mentioned in the same sentence, while *uoo* is used in all other cases.

aap 'you' is similar to a pronoun in many ways. It is a polite expression; later on you will hear other forms, which are used in less formal speech. It is safe to use *aap* with most strangers. Notice that *aap* is always used with the plural *hāī*, no matter whether one or several persons are addressed (just like the English "you" is used with "are").

C. HOW TO ADDRESS A PERSON

aadaab arz janaab 'How do you do, sir?'

In greeting each other, Indians use one of several conventional phrases. Some of these are very common. You may hear many others, sometimes very elaborate ones. Some of them are used by Hindus only, others by Moslems only, others only by certain Hindu castes, etc. The material given here, however, is in common use everywhere.

The most general greeting is *salaam*, used also when parting. *aadaab arz* is more formal and slightly Moslem; it is used only when you meet a person. For saying good-by, the more formal expression is *xudaa haafiz*. *janaab* can be used after these greetings, roughly equivalent to our 'sir.' *janaab* (or *janaab-janaab*) can also be used by itself as a greeting meaning 'How do you do, sir?'

salaam saahab 'Good morning (good afternoon, etc.), sir.'

iee saahab kaun hāī 'Who is this gentleman?'

saahab means "Sir!", but also "gentleman": *uoo saahab* 'that gentleman.'

kiaa raam laal hāī 'Is Mr. Ram Lal in?'

"Mr." before names does not have to have a Hindustani equivalent. It is all right, though, to use *saahab* after the name: *iee Potter saahab hāī* 'this is Mr. Potter.'

You have noticed that with all these expressions you find the plural, *hāī*, rather than the singular, *hai*. This, too, marks more elaborate courtesy.

The question *aap kaisee hāī* is actually an inquiry after the other fellow's health, and not just a casual greeting, as the English "How are you?" Thus, it is used much less in casual conversation.

D. "IS, THERE IS, IS IN"

kiaa raam laal hāī 'Is Mr. Ram Lal in?'

hai, *hāī* are also the regular equivalents of such English expressions as "there is . . .," "there are . . .," "is there . . .," "(he) is in," etc. For example: *paanii hai* 'there is water,' *andee hāī* 'there are eggs.' The "there" in "there is" is rendered by *uahāā* only when it conveys the definite meaning 'over there, yonder': *paanii uahāā hai* 'the water is over there.'

E. "THE, A, AN"

There is not much room in Hindustani for the distinction we make between "time," "the time," "a time." All these things are expressed by one word, namely *uakt*. One, however, often hears phrases like *ek gaarii* 'a train' (literally: "one train"); *ek doost* 'a friend'. In other words, there is no such thing as an "article" in Hindustani.

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study

Read aloud several times the examples given you in the *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat the operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As

a final test, cover the Hindustani and see if you can speak out the Hindustani expressions by simply looking at the English. Skip about and test yourself thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. Go through them as many times as you can, taking turns repeating the Hindustani individually. Try it with books closed and see how you get along without the help of the *Aids to Listening*. Always keep in mind the meaning of the Hindustani you are hearing and speaking. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* be on the lookout for examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. For the detailed procedure to be followed read again the instructions for the review of the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Here is your chance to find out just how well you have learned the meaning of the Hindustani expressions you have had up to this point. Go back to the *Basic Sen-*

tences in Section A and cover the English. Read the Hindustani aloud and see whether you can supply the English equivalents of the words and phrases. Mark those you are not sure about and after reading the list through, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Cover the English again and repeat the procedure until you can go through the entire list giving all the meanings without difficulty.

3. What Would You Say?

For each of the following situations, two or more Hindustani sentences are given. All the sentences make

perfectly good sense and are written in correct Hindustani, but only one of them fits the situation. Read all of them out loud and pick out the one that fits the situation. Be sure you know why the other choices are not suitable. At the next meeting of the group you will be asked to say what you have chosen, and you will have a chance to test your answers. Do not write anything down.

1. You are introducing your friend, Mr. Potter, to Mr. Ram Lal and you say:
 - a. *in-see miliiee. in-kaa naam Mr. Potter hai.*
 - b. *māi aap-see mil-kar bahot xuś hūū.*
2. Mr. Ram Lal asks you whether Mr. Potter speaks Hindustani by saying:
 - a. *kiaa aap hindustaan pasand kartee hāi?*
 - b. *kiaa aap-kee doost hindustaanii booltee hāi?*
3. You answer that he understands:
 - a. *aap samjhee?*

- b. *samajhtee hāi.*
- c. *māi nahīī samajhtaa.*

4. Mr. Ram Lal asks Mr. Potter where he comes from, saying:
 - a. *kiaa aap-kee baal-baḷḷee amriikaa-mēē hāi?*
 - b. *aap kahāū-see hāi.*
5. Mr. Potter replies:
 - a. *māi bahot pasand kartaa hūū.*
 - b. *māi kab aaūū.*
 - c. *māi amriikaa-see hūū.*
6. Mr. Ram Lal invites Mr. Potter for a meal:
 - a. *iee aap-kaa ghar hai.*
 - b. *jaldii zaruur aaiee.*
 - c. *aap kab khaanee-kee liiee aa saktee hāi.*
7. The servant tells Mr. Potter to wait:
 - a. *thoorii deer Thairīee.*
 - b. *takliif mat-karoo.*
 - c. *deer hootii hai.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Read the English describing the situations in *What Would You Say?* of Section C, and call on different students, not in any fixed order, to speak the Hindustani which the situation calls for. Encourage the students to give the Hindustani, if they can, without reading it from the simplified spelling in their books. Then ask different members of the group to give the meaning in English of the different Hindustani expressions listed for each situation.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The Leader will ask different members of the group to

speak the Hindustani to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the

choices made if they do not agree with them. The Leader will also ask for the English equivalents of all

the other expressions offered as choices, taking turns around the group.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As a further check on the students' understanding of the *Word Study*, read the English equivalent of the Hindustani expressions given before each comment under *Word Study*. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, to give the correct Hindustani for the English. For instance, say to A: "*hindustani-i-mêê* they (you) are-*koo kiaa kah'lee hâi*" and so on. The Guide will at this point indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Hindustani expression that is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will signal that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the right answer. Any member of the group who has difficulty in giving the correct Hindustani should be told to review the *Word Study* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not take time in this exercise to talk about the *why*. Stick to the *how*.

The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Hindustani for the English equivalents of the expressions you studied in the *Word Study*. If you give the wrong answer, the Guide will let you know by making a negative sign; or, if there is no Guide,

the other members of the group will indicate that they think your answer is wrong. The Leader will then immediately call on someone else for the right answer. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Hindustani, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Re-read the note *To the Group Leader* in Section D1 of Unit 1. Follow the same procedure as outlined there. The first time you go through the conversations, check up on the meaning at the end of each conversation. Then go through all of them a second time without stopping. Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Get them to do a little acting if you can. Encourage them to speak loudly and clearly and to get into the spirit of the situation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Hindustani immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time

out to check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt. Ask some other member of the group to give you the English equivalent or in case no one knows, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit and make sure that you understand every-

thing before you proceed any further. Go through the conversations a second time, repeating after the Guide individually. Then take parts in the conversations. This exercise contains almost all the new words you have learned in this unit.

Listening In

Record 4A, after 5th spiral.

1. Jim and his friend meet Mr. Das in the street:

Das: *iee saaheb kaun hāī.*

Jim: *iee meeree doost hāī.*
in-see miliice. in-kaa naam Mr. Potter hai.

Das: *aadaab-arz janaab. māī aap-see mil-kar, bahot xuṣ hūū.*

Jim: *meeree doost, hindustaanii, nahīī booltee.*
uoo amriikaa-see hāī.

Das: *kiaa iee hindustaan pasand kartee hāī?*

Jim: *jii hāā. bahot pasand kartee hāī.*

Record 4B, beginning.

Das: *kiaa aap khaanee-kee liice aa saktee hāī?*

Jim: *Mr. Potter-koo thooraa kaam hai.*
leekin māī aaūū-gaa.
aap-kaa ghar kahāū hai.

Das: *uahāū hai.*

baaīī taraf.

Jim: *Thiik.*

māī saat bajee aaūū-gaa.

Record 4B, after 1st spiral.

2. Jim is looking for a restaurant:

Jim: *maaf kiijiice janaab.*
khaanee-kii dukaan kahāū hai.

Das: *ice khaanee-kii dukaan hai.*
aap-kee liice, kiaa kar saktaa hūū.

[Jim:]¹ *phir booliice;*
māī nahīī samajhtaa.

Das: *kiaa aap hindustaanii booltee hāī?*

Jim: *jii hāā.*
leekin dhiiree dhiiree booliice.

Das: *māī aap-kee liice, kiaa kar saktaa hūū.*

Jim: *māī khaanaa čaah'taa hūū.*

Das: *aap kiaa caah'tee hāī.*
kiaa aap anDee pasand kartee hāī?

Jim: *jii hāā.*
māī bahot pasand kartaa hūū.

Das: *thoorii deer Thairiice janaab,*
maaf kiijiice.

Jim: *Thiik.*

Das: *anDee iahāū hāī.*

¹Not recorded.

Jim: *šukriiaa. iee aap-kee liiee hai.*

Das: *bahot meherbaanii janaab:*

Record 4B, after 2nd spiral.

3. Jim introduces his son to Das:

Das: *maaf kiijiiee janaab. iee-saaheb kaun hāī.*

Jim: *iee meeraa beetaa-hai.*
uoo kaali-j-mēē parhṭaa hai.

Das: *kiaa uoo kaali-j pasand kartee hāī?*

Jim: *jii nahīī janaab.*

Das: *phir uoo kiaa pasand kartee hāī.*

Jim: *uoo sigreṭ piinaa pasand kartaa hai.*
leekin māī sigreṭ piinaa nahīī pasand kartaa.

Das: *kiaa aap-kii biiuii iahāā hai?*

Jim: *jii nahīī.*
meerii biiuii-koo kučh takliif hai.
uoo ghar-mēē hai.
aap-kii biiuii, kahāā hāī.

Das: *meerii biiuii isṭeeṣan-mēē hai.*
deer hootii hai.

meerii gaarīi aatḥ bajee jaatīi hai.
māī jaanaa ṛaahṭaa hūū.
xudaa haafiz,

Jim: *salaam janaab.*

Is there any word or phrase in this conversation that you do not understand now? If there is, be sure to find out its meaning by asking members of your group or looking it up in the *Basic Sentences*.

Go through the conversations again following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying in Hindustani.

Finally go through the conversations a third time. Take turns speaking the parts and continue until everybody has had a chance to speak at least one of the parts. Keep this exercise going as long as you have time. Get the most out of this individual performance and when your turn comes, speak clearly and with feeling. The Guide will correct any errors he hears by asking you to repeat. Make every effort to satisfy him with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Cover up the Hindustani. Read the English silently and test your-

self to see how many words and phrases you can say in Hindustani. Check the words you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Hindustani and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or

until you can give the Hindustani readily for all the expressions. This test is hard, but if you succeed in saying the Hindustani for all the sentences by merely looking at the English, you are doing well indeed. To make sure of this, after you are certain you know the

material, pick out expressions at random and see if you can still speak the Hindustani quickly. As you practice, you must always speak the Hindustani aloud and try to imitate the pronunciation of your Guide as well as you can recall it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Basic Sentences*. Read to the group the English equivalents of the Hindustani expressions. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Hindustani for the English. This check-up is to be conducted in the same way as the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Section E 2 of Unit 1. If you have any question about the proper procedure, review the note *To the Group Leader* in that section. Remember not to spend any time talking about the *why* of the Hindustani; stick to the *how*.

In this section you are going to have your second chance to engage in conversation in Hindustani. Remember that this is the most useful part of your study. Therefore, you should make the greatest effort to do this part as well as you possibly can. Get perfectly clear what you are to do and then plunge into it with enthusiasm.

Before you begin the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Hindustani you have learned up to this point. As in the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of

Unit 1, the Leader of the Group will ask you to supply in turn the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Basic Sentences*. Figure out how to say the Hindustani for each English phrase or sentence whether it is your turn to speak or not. Only in this way can you get the most value out of the *Check-Up*. If there is much of the Hindustani which you don't know, review the *Basic Sentences* at the first opportunity outside of the group meeting.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: This section represents the real purpose of the entire unit. The course is intended to teach you to speak Hindustani and to understand it when you hear it spoken. Follow the instructions and give all the time you can to free conversation practice. Any members of the group who have special difficulty recalling the Hindustani words and phrases they need to express a meaning should be told to do more work with the *Useful Words and Phrases* and *Basic Sentences*. They need, in particular, more practice in covering the Hindustani and recalling it when they

read the English. Practice in getting the meaning of the *Listening In* records will also help. Arrangements should be made for students to play and listen to the records whenever they can between meetings of the group.

Then turn to the outlined conversations which follow. Assign parts and ask the students to act them out. Vary the situations and suggest to the students that they vary the Hindustani slightly as they gain confidence in their speaking. Remember to keep the speaking loud enough so that everyone can hear. See that everyone is listening and trying to understand the Hindustani that is being spoken.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to reproduce the conversational situations which follow. Act your part. Don't be afraid to vary the conversation if you are sure of your Hindustani and use the Hindustani you have learned in Unit 1 as well as that of Unit 2. Continue this practice until everyone can speak any part of the conversations even though slight changes in the situations are introduced.

1. You meet Mr. Das and his friend, Mr. Potter, on the street and exchange greetings:

1. You say how do you do to Mr. Das, and ask how he is.
2. Mr. Das says he's well, thank you, and asks you how you are.
3. You say you're fine, thanks, and ask who that gentleman is.
4. Mr. Das tells you this is his friend, Mr. Potter, and asks you to meet him.
5. You tell Mr. Potter you're very glad to meet him. You ask him where he comes from.
6. Mr. Potter tells you he's from America.
7. You ask him whether he likes India.
8. He answers that he likes it very much.
9. You ask him to come for a meal.

10. Mr. Potter accepts and thanks you.

2. You enter a store and greet a salesman:

1. You say hello.
2. He says how do you do, and asks what he can do for you.
3. You tell him you want cigarettes.
4. He asks you to wait a moment.
5. You say all right.
6. He says here are the cigarettes.
7. You thank him and ask him how much it is.
8. He tells you it is three annas.
9. You say here it is.
10. He says thank you very much, sir, please come again.
11. You both say goodbye.

Throw yourself into these conversations. Do the best you can with pronunciation and with the Hindustani, but don't worry too much about mistakes. Think more of acting your part and speaking smoothly and as though you must mean what you are saying. The Guide will help you correct your errors. If you can do this work well, it means that you are actually conversing in Hindustani, and that is your chief aim in this course.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Read again the instructions given in Section F of the preceding unit. Then continue the conversations which you started in Section E of this unit.

Take every opportunity between now and the next meeting of the group to try out your Hindustani on other members of the group or on native speakers

around you. Carry on conversations with them whenever you get a chance. Ask questions. At this stage of the game, don't try to use phrases or sentences which are different from those you have learned thus far in this course.

FINDER LIST

This is a complete alphabetical list of all the words and expressions used in this unit which are in any way new or unusual. From now on we shall not repeat words which have been drilled sufficiently in previous units. This list is for reference only, but you should know all these before going on to the next unit.

<i>aaiiee</i> <i>amriikaa</i> <i>andar</i> <i>aap-kaa</i> <i>aap-kee</i> <i>aa saktee hāī</i> <i>aaññ</i> <i>aaññ-gaa</i>	<i>a</i> please come America inside your your (you) can come I should come I shall come	<i>deekhtaa hūū</i> <i>deer (-ii)</i> <i>doost</i>	<i>d</i> I look, I see period of time, delay friend
<i>baal-baččee</i> <i>bahot</i> <i>beeTaa</i> <i>biiuii (-ii)</i> <i>booltee hāī</i>	<i>b</i> members of the family much, very son wife he speaks (polite) you speak	<i>ghar</i> <i>hāī</i> <i>hindustaan</i> <i>hoolii hai</i> <i>iee</i> <i>in-kaa</i> <i>in-see</i>	<i>g</i> house <i>h</i> are India it is getting, it becomes <i>i</i> this, these, he, she, it, they his (polite form) with him (polite)

<i>jaanaa</i>	<i>i</i>	to go	<i>paRhtaai hai</i>	<i>ḍ</i>	he studies
<i>jaldii</i>		early	<i>pasand kartaa hūū</i>		I like
	<i>k</i>		<i>pasand kartee</i>		you like;
			<i>hāī</i>		he likes (polite)
<i>kaaliḡ</i>		college		<i>s</i>	
<i>kaam</i>		work	<i>saaheb</i>		gentleman
<i>karoo</i>		do!	<i>saktee hāī</i>		you can
<i>kar saktaa hūū</i>		I can do	<i>samajhtee hāī</i>		you understand
<i>kaun</i>		who?			he understands
<i>-kee liiee</i>		for . . .			(polite)
<i>khaanee-kee liiee</i>		for eating, in order to eat	<i>-see</i>		with . . .
<i>kiaa</i>		see <i>Word Study</i>			from . . .
<i>-koo</i>		to . . .		<i>t</i>	
	<i>l</i>		<i>takliif (-ii)</i>		trouble
<i>laRkee</i>		boys	<i>thooRaa</i>		a little, some
<i>leekin</i>		but	<i>thooRii</i>		a little, some
<i>liiee</i>		for	<i>too</i>		then
	<i>m</i>		<i>Thairiiee</i>	<i>T</i>	
<i>mat</i>		don't!	<i>Thairiū-gaa</i>		please wait
<i>mat-karoo</i>		don't do!	<i>Thiik</i>		I'll wait
<i>meeraa</i>		my			all right
<i>meeree</i>		my	<i>uoo</i>	<i>u</i>	
<i>meerii</i>		my			that, those, he, she, it, they
<i>miliiee</i>		please meet	<i>xuṣ</i>	<i>x</i>	
<i>mil-kar</i>		having met			glad, happy
	<i>n</i>		<i>zaruur</i>	<i>z</i>	
<i>naam</i>		name			by all means

WHAT'S YOUR TRADE?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Read carefully the note to the Leader in Section A of Unit 2. Then go through the *Basic Sentences* once, and take up the *Hints on Pronunciation*. Go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually, paying especial attention to pronunciation.

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, in unison, in the same way you did for Section A of the preceding unit. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences. After you have gone through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison and have done the *Hints on*

Pronunciation, come back to the *Basic Sentences*. Pay particular attention to the points of pronunciation you have just been working on and go through the sentences at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 5A, beginning.

Jim asks Paul about his trade and his family.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

Jim:
it is my opinion
that I know you
I think I know you.
Isn't your name Smith?

Paul:
Yes, my name is Paul Smith.

AIDS TO LISTENING

meeraa xiaal hai,
kee aap-koo jaantaa hūū,
meeraa xiaal hai kee aap-koo jaantaa hūū,
too kiaa aap-kaa naam Smith hai,

yii hāā. meeraa naam Paul Smith hai.

Jim:
the brother
I'm your brother's friend.

Paul:
My younger brother's?

Jim:
No, your elder brother's.
now
Where is he now?

Paul:
I don't know.
the sailor
He's a sailor.

Jim:
you, too
Are you a sailor, too?

Paul:
No.
and
both
in the army
My younger brother and I are both in the army.

we
American soldiers
We are American soldiers.

*bhaaai,
māī aap-kee bhaaai-kaa doost hūū,*

meerce ḥhootḥe bhaaai-kaa?

jii nahīī. aap-kee baṛee bhaaai-kaa.

*abhii,
abhii uoo kahūā hāī,*

mujh-koo maaluum nahīī.

*jahuazii,
uoo jahaazii hāī.*

*aap bhii,
kiaa aap bhii jahaazii hāī?*

jii nahīī.

*aur,
doonōō,
fauj-mēē,
māī, aur meeraa ḥhootaa bhaaai, doonōō fauj-mēē hāī.*

*ham-loog,
amriikan sipaahii,
ham-loog amriikan sipaahii hāī.*

Jim:
(you) stay
Where do you live?

Paul:
with a friend
We live with a friend

Record 5B, beginning.

Do you know him?
His name is Ram Lal.

Jim:
I don't think so.

his trade
What's he do?

Paul:
He's a shopkeeper.

his shop
His shop is very big.
Do you want to meet him?

Jim:
(I) cannot meet
I can't meet him now.

to me
is not
I haven't any time.
But I can meet him tomorrow.

*rah^htee hāī,
aap kahāā rah^htee hāī.*

*ek doost-kee saath.
ham-loog ek doost-kee saath rah^htee hāī.*

*kiaa aap un-koo jaantee hāī?
un-kaa naam raam laal hai.*

meeraa xiaal nahīī.

*un-kaa peeśaa,
un-kaa peeśaa kiaa hai.*

uoo dukandaar hāī.

*un-kii dukaan,
un-kii dukaan bahot bariī hai.
kiaa aap un-koo milnaa chaah^htee hāī?*

*nahīī mil saktaa.
māī un-koo abhiī nahīī mil saktaa.*

*mujh-koo,
nahīī,
mujh-koo uakt nahīī.
leekin kal un-koo mil saktaa hūū.*

Paul:
Sunday
Tomorrow's Sunday.

(he) doesn't work
He doesn't work on Sunday.

on Monday or Tuesday
(we) can see
But we can see him on Monday or Tuesday.

Jim:
Good.

Paul:
his sister
(she) works
His sister works in his store, too.

the very beautiful girl
She's a very pretty girl.

Jim:
with pleasure
I'll be glad to come with you.

ituaar,
kal ituaar hai.

kaam nahī kartee.
uoo ituaar-koo kaam nahī kartee.

soomuaar, iaa mangal-mēē,
deekh saktee hāī;
leekin ham-loog, soomuaar, iaa mangal-mēē, un-koo deekh
saktee hāī.

aččhaa,

un-kii bahen,
kaam kartii hai,
un-kii bahen bhii un-kii dukaan-mēē kaam kartii hai.

xubsuurat larkii,
uoo bahot xubsuurat larkii hai.

xuṣii-see,
māi xuṣii-see aap-kee saath aaūū-gaa.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

Vowels written double are, except at the end of a

word, about twice as long as short vowels. They also have a difference in quality. For instance, *a* sounds like the *u* of 'cut', *aa* like the *a* of 'father'. Listen to the difference of length and quality as the Guide (or record) pronounces the following words, and imitate carefully

Record 6A, beginning.

Practice 1

<i>andar</i>	'inside'	<i>aanee</i>	'annas'
<i>ham-loog</i>	'we (people)'	<i>daam</i>	'price'
<i>kal</i>	'yesterday'	<i>xiaal</i>	'thought'

Other vowels also are about twice as long as those written singly. Most of them differ in quality as well. Remember *e* and *ee* differ mainly in length, both have about the quality of *e* in "red"; *i* is about like the *i* in "hit", *ii* like the *i* in "police"; *o* is very short while *oo* is about like *o* in "note"; *u* is about like *u* in "put", *uu* is about like *u* in "rude". Listen for these vowel differences and imitate your Guide.

Record 6A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 2

<i>mcherbaanii</i>	'thank you'	<i>meeraa xiaal hai</i>	'I think'
<i>bahen</i>	'sister'	<i>peeṣaa</i>	'trade'
<i>sigreṭ</i>	'cigarette'	<i>sūdhee</i>	'straight ahead'
<i>phir</i>	'again'	<i>dhiiree</i>	'slowly'
<i>bahot</i>	'very'	<i>rootii</i>	'bread'
<i>kuḥ</i>	'some'	<i>duudh</i>	'milk'
<i>dukaan</i>	'shop'	<i>xubsuurat</i>	'pretty'

In Hindustani double consonants are also pronounced doubly long. Compare English "meaning"; "mean-

ness"; "roomer": "roommate"; "madder" (pronounced with one "d" though written with two): "mad dog". Listen for these differences as the Guide pronounces the following practices and imitate him.

Record 6A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 3

<i>doonōō</i>	'both'	<i>jaannaa</i>	'to know'
<i>soomuaar</i>	'Monday'	<i>*ummiid</i>	'hope'
<i>ḥhooṭii</i>	'small'	<i>*ḥhurṭii</i>	'furlough'
<i>jaalii hai</i>	'it goes'	<i>*bijlii-kii battii</i>	'electric light'
<i>ḥaar</i>	'four'	<i>baal-baḥḥee</i>	'the members of the family'
<i>ḥhai</i>	'six'	<i>aḥḥhaa</i>	'good'

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Again do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once again individually. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

*These words will appear in later units.

3. Check Yourself

Did you distinguish carefully between short vowels and long vowels?

Did you pronounce *čhootii* with a back *ɾ*, and *jaatii* with a front *l*?

Did you roll your *r*'s and flap your *R*'s?

Did you pronounce a long *n* in *jaannaa*?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

As in Section B1 of Unit 2, read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Hindustani. Then read the comments which follow each list. When you have finished the *Word Study* ask other members of the group about points which are not clear to you.

A. ADJECTIVES AS QUALIFIERS.

amriikan <i>sipaahii</i>	'an American soldier'
xubsuurat <i>larkii</i>	'a beautiful girl'
cek <i>rupiaa</i>	'one rupee'

In Hindustani, just as in English, the words for 'American', 'beautiful', 'one' may qualify and precede the words for 'soldier', 'girl', 'rupee'. We shall call the former type of words **ADJECTIVES**, (bold-faced in the above examples), and the latter, **NOUNS**. Many adjectives behave like the three mentioned here; they always have the same form. (We shall call them class 1 adjectives.)

eck <i>meeraa beetaa</i>	'one (of) my brother(s)'
<i>meeraa čhootaa bhaaii</i>	'my younger brother'
<i>us-kaa daam</i>	'its price'
<i>thookii deer</i>	'a little while'
<i>meerii biivii</i>	'my wife'
<i>un-kii dukaan</i>	'his shop'

Other adjectives (class 2) have three different forms. We have encountered two of them: one ending in *-aa* and the other in *-ii*. The one in *-aa* will be known as **MASCULINE**, the one in *-ii* as **FEMININE**. The choice between these two forms depends upon the noun which is described by the adjective. Some nouns must be preceded by the masculine form of the adjective (**MASCULINE NOUNS**); others must be preceded by the feminine forms (**FEMININE NOUNS**). As there is nothing in the noun itself to tell us with certainty whether it is one or the other, you will, from now on, have to remember the **GENDER** (whether it is masculine or feminine) of every new noun you learn. In the *Finder Lists* feminine nouns have been marked by an (*-ii*) to indicate that an adjective of class 2 appears with a final *-ii* before the noun in question. In our examples, the nouns *beetaa* 'son',

bhaaii 'brother', *daam* 'price' are masculine; and the nouns *deer* 'while', *biiuii* 'wife', and *dukaan* 'shop' are feminine.

B. ADJECTIVES WITH THE VERB "TO BE".

<i>māi</i> <i>xuś hūū</i>	'I am happy'
<i>māi</i> <i>aččhaa hūū</i>	'I am (feeling) well'
<i>un-kii dukaan</i> <i>barii hai</i>	'his shop is big'

Just as in English, the words for 'am', 'is', 'are' are seldom found in a phrase by themselves. Usually, they are preceded in closely-knit expressions by nouns, adjectives, and other words. In the above examples, you find ADJECTIVES with *hūū* 'am' and *hai* 'is': *xuś* 'glad' belongs, of course, to class 1, and does not change. *barii* 'large' belongs to class 2, and shows the feminine form, for *dukaan* (preceded by *un-kii*!) is a feminine noun.

In *māi aččhaa hūū* there is no noun for the adjective to refer to. All you have here is the word *māi* 'I'; and even this may be left off. When a class 2 adjective refers to a male person, who is mentioned by pronoun, or not even explicitly mentioned in the sentence, it will have the masculine *-aa* form; if it refers to a woman, it will have the feminine *-ii* form. In other words, the phrase *māi bahot aččhaa hūū* 'I am very well' as you have learned it, could not be said by a woman. A woman would have to say: *māi bahot ačchi hūū*.

C. PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR.

<i>māi</i> <i>čaah'taa hūū</i>	'I want'
--------------------------------	----------

(<i>māi</i>) <i>aap-koo jaantaa hūū</i>	'I know you'
<i>gaarii kab jaatii hai</i>	'when does the train go?'
<i>uoo</i> (namely, <i>gaarii</i> !)	'it (namely, the train)
<i>fauran jaatii hai</i>	goes right away.'

If you compare these expressions with the ones under B, you will find that in Hindustani, when expressing 'I want', 'it goes', you say something like: 'I AM desirous,' 'it IS in motion.' In other words, you use expressions with *hūū*, *hai* 'am, is', preceded by something like an adjective in *-aa*, *-ii*. *māi čaah'taa hūū* is built just like *māi aččhaa hūū* 'I am well'. Again, a woman would have to say *māi čaah'tii hūū* 'I want (that is, I AM desirous).' On the other hand, it is *gaarii kab jaatii hai*, which means that *gaarii* is a feminine noun. You also say *uoo kab jaatii hai* because in this case *uoo* stands for *gaarii*. We shall refer to these expressions as PRESENT TENSE forms.

D. MASCULINE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES AND PRESENT TENSES.

<i>meeree laRkee</i>	'my boys'
<i>aap kaisce hāi</i>	'how are you?'
(<i>aap</i>) <i>kiaa kah'tee hāi</i>	'what do you say?'
<i>aap aa sakte hāi</i>	'you can come.'

The adjective forms in *-aa* and *-ii* so far discussed are all with verbs in the singular (*hūū*, *hai*). For the PLURAL (with *hāi* 'are') there is a third form in *-ee* which is used

as a MASCULINE form, that is, with a masculine noun or with reference to a male person, or a thing of undetermined character. (Feminine nouns, and female persons are referred to by the feminine form in *-ii*. There is no special feminine plural form for adjectives). Compare the singular expressions:

meeraa beeTaa . . . hai 'my son is . . .'
māi čaah'taa hūū 'I (*man speaking*) wish'

with the plural expressions:

meeree larkee . . . hāi 'my boys are . . .'
aap kiaa kah'tee hāi 'what do you say?'

E. INFINITIVE (-NAA-FORM) AND STEM OF VERBS.

māi dhoonaa čaah'taa hūū 'I WANT to wash'
kiaa aap un-koo milnaa 'Do you want to meet
caah'tee hāi him'
kal un-koo mil saktaa hūū 'I can meet him to-
 morrow'
aap aa saktee hāi 'you can come'
aap-kee liicee kiaa kar 'what can I do for you?'
saktaa hūū

Notice that the verb for 'I, they . . . wish', (*čaah'taa hūū*, *čaah'taa hai*, *čaah'tee hāi*) is preceded by a form in *-naa*, as *dhoonaa* 'to wash', *milnaa* 'to meet'. (This form we shall call INFINITIVE.)

On the other hand, the verb for 'I, he, they . . . can'

(*saktaa hūū*, etc.) is preceded by a form without this *-naa*: *mil* 'meet', *aa* 'come', *kar* 'do'. (We shall call it the STEM.)

F. "ALSO, TOO".

un-kii bahen bhii un-kii dukaan- 'His sister works in
mēcē kaam kartii hai his store, too'
kiaa aap bhii jahaazii hāi? 'are you a sailor, too'

The word *bhii* means 'also' or 'too' (NOT, of course, the 'too' preceding an adjective or adverb as in "too big, too soon" which is simply *bahot* . . . or *zīadaa* . . .). You must be very careful in using it, for it must always go immediately after the word or words which it stresses. English is less strict in this matter. For instance, the English sentence 'are you a sailor, too' may mean two entirely different things, namely (1) 'are you a sailor, too, like your brother', or (2) 'are you a sailor, too, in addition to being a fisherman'. In the first case the 'too' goes with 'you' ('you, not only others')—its Hindustani equivalent is *aap bhii*. In the second case, 'too' goes with 'a sailor' ('a sailor, not only a fisherman')—in Hindustani it would be *jahaazii bhii*. The sentence *un-kii bahen un-kii dukaan-mēcē bhii kaam kartii hai* would imply that the man's sister works in other places as well as in his store. If it were *un-kii bahen un-kii dukaan-mēcē kaam bhii kartii hai*, it would mean 'she not only sits around in the store, but she does work as well'.

Read aloud several times all the examples given in

this section on *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat this operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As a final test, cover the Hindustani and see if you can say the Hindustani expression simply by looking at the English.

Before you go on to the next section, turn back to the *Basic Sentences* and look for examples of the things that have just been explained to you. Examine all the nouns and see if you can tell which type each one belongs to. The phrase *thookaa kaam* 'some work', for instance, shows that *kaam* 'work' is a masculine noun. If the *Basic Sentences* don't show you which gender a noun is, be sure to look in the *Finder List* whether or not it is marked "-ii". Remember that you have to have this information on every noun; if you don't, you can't use it.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*. Follow the procedure suggested above.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A, cover the English and test yourself by reading the Hindustani, just as you did in Section C of the previous unit. If

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study

(Individual Study)

Before you leave the *Word Study*, cover the English equivalents in each list and make sure that you know the meaning of every Hindustani expression. Then cover the Hindustani and see if you can say each Hindustani expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences*. Repeat individually with books closed. Work always to perfect your pronunciation; keep the meaning in mind; and observe examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

you are not sure about the meaning of any words or phrases, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences* aloud, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

In the following exercise you have certain situations presented for which you are to choose the correct ex-

pression in Hindustani. Read the situation, repeat aloud all the solutions for each situation, and then indicate for the next class meeting the answer which you consider the most appropriate.

You meet Jim on the street and start talking:

1. You say that your name is Smith:

- a. *meeraa naam Smith hai.*
- b. *un-kaa naam Smith hai.*

2. Jim answers that he knows you:

- a. *mujh-koo maaluum nahī.*
- b. *māī aap-koo jaantaa hūū.*

3. He says that he is a friend of your elder brother:

- a. *māī aur meeraa chhootaa bhaaii, doonōō fauj-mēē hūū.*
- b. *ham-loog cek doost-kee saath rah'tee hāī.*
- c. *māī aap-kee baree bhaaii-kaa doost hūū.*

4. He asks where your brother is now:

- a. *kīaa aap bhīi jahaazīi hāī?.*
- b. *un-kaa pēśaa kīaa hai.*
- c. *abhīi uoō kahāā hāī.*

5. You answer that you don't know:

- a. *meeraa xīaal nahīi.*
- b. *mujh-koo maaluum nahīi.*
- c. *mujh-koo uakt nahīi.*

6. You say that he is in the army:

- a. *uoō fauj-mēē hāī.*
- b. *uoō dukaan-mēē kaam kartīi hai.*
- c. *uoō bahot xuubsuurat larkīi hai.*

7. You say that you can see him on Sunday:

- a. *māī un-koo abhīi nahīi mil saktaa.*
- b. *un-koo miliiee.*
- c. *ham-loog ituaar-mēē un-koo deekh saktee hāī.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section D of Unit 2. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) to give their answers in Hindustani for the exercise *What Would You Say?* in Section C3 of this unit. Encourage them to give the answers directly and not from the books, if possible. Then check on the students' knowledge of the meaning in English of the different expressions in Hindustani.

Go back to the last exercises in the preceding section. The Leader will call for your answers in Hindustani for the exercises. If you can, give the correct answers without reading from the book. Other members of the group

will criticize the choice made if they disagree. The Leader will then call for the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercises.

2. Word-Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for this part of Section D of Unit 2. Call on various students for the correct Hindustani for the English equivalents of the expressions given in the *Word Study*. Make sure that all the students have learned the material thoroughly.

Go back to the *Word Study* in Section B. The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Hindustani for the English equivalents of the expressions you went over in the *Word Study*. Be sure

you are able to give the correct form without having to read it from the book. If you have any difficulty, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for *Listening In* in Section D3 of Unit 2. Check up on meaning at the end of each conversation on the first time through; then, after the second time through, assign parts and have the students read the conversations.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations, or while they are played on the phonograph, and repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. At the end of each conversation, check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt, either by asking some other member of the group or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again, with your books open, being sure to imitate carefully and to keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying. Then take turns speaking the parts. Make the conversations real. Say your part as though you meant it.

Record 6A, after 3rd spiral.

1. Jim and Das are sitting in a restaurant.

Jim: *uoo saahab kaun hāi,*

Das: *uoo meeraa bhaaii hai.*

Jim: *aap-kaa chootaa bhaaii?*

Das: *jii nahīi.*

meeree baree bhaaii.

Jim: *meeraa xiaal hai kee māi un-koo jaantaa hūū.
kiaa un-kii biiuui-kaa naam Mary hai?*

Das: *jii hāā.*

un-kii biiuui-kaa naam Mary hai.

Jim: *uoo abhiī kahāā rah^htee hāī,*

Das: *meeree bhaaiī aur un-kii biiuii,*
doonōō eek doost-kee saath rah^htee hāī.

Jim: *kiaa māī un-koo mil saktaa hūū?*

Das: *aaj nahīī.*
leekin kal ham-loog un-see mil saktee hāī.

Jim: *kiaa māī eek doost-kee saath aa saktaa hūū?*

Das: *zaruur.*
kiaa māī aap-kee doost-koo jaantaa hūū?

Jim: *mujh-koo maaluum nahīī.*
un-kaa naam Brown hai.
uoo dukandaar hāī.

Das: *meeraa xiaal hai kee māī un-koo nahīī jaantaa.*
leekin xušii-see un-koo milnaa caah^htaa hūū.

Jim: *ač^hhaa māī kal Brown-kee saath aaūū-gaa.*

Record 6B, beginning.

Listening In (Cont.)

2. Jim goes shopping.

Das: *andar aaiīee janaab,*
māī aap-kee liīee, kiaa kar saktaa hūū.

Jim: *māī aur meeree doost amriikan sipaahīī hāī.*
ham-loog hindustaanīī bahot nahīī booltee.
dhiīree dhiīree boolīīee.

Das: *bahot xušii-see janaab,*
aap kiaa čaah^htee hāī.

Jim: *ham-loog rootīī čaah^htee hāī.*

Das: *īee rootīī-kii dukaan nahīī janaab.*
īee duudh-kii dukaan hai.

Jim: *phir boolīīee,*
ham-loog nahīī samajh^htee.

Das: *īee duudh-kii dukaan hai,*
aap samj^hhee?

Jim: *jīī hāā.*
bahot meherbaanīī.
rootīī-kii dukaan kahāā hai.

Das: *aap rootīī-kii dukaan, iahāā-see deekh saktee hāī.*
uoo baaiī taraf hai.

Jim: *kiaa bakīī dukaan hai?*

Das: *jīī nahīī.*
bahot čhooTīī dukaan hai.

Jim: *māī uoo deekhtaa hūū.*
bahot meherbaanīī.

Das: *kuč^h baat nahīī janaab,*
xudaa haafiz,

Jim: *salaam.*

Record 6B, after 1st spiral.

3. Planning for a date.

Jim: *kiaa aap iahāā eek larkīī-koo jaantee hāī?*

Das: *aap kīaa ṛaah^etee hāī.*

Jim: *māī eek larkīī-kee saath, khaance-kīī dukaan-mēē,
khaanaa ṛaah^etaa hūū.*

Das: *bahot aṛṛhaa.*

*meerīī bahen bahot xuubsuurat larkīī hai.
kīaa aap un-koo milnaa ṛaah^etee hāī?*

Jim: *jīī hāā.*

bahot xuṣīī-see.

kīaa māī abhīī aap-kee saath aa saktaa hūū?

Das: *abhīī uoo ghar-mēē nahīī.*

uoo hooTal-mēē kaam kartīī hai.

leekin aap ṛhai bajee aa saktee hāī.

Jim: *ṛhai bajee deer hai. leekin māī aaūū-gaa.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Just as you did in Section E of Unit 2, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Hindustani and test yourself to see how many words and phrases

you can say in Hindustani when you are looking only at the English.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As in Unit 2, go around the class calling on various students and asking them; "*hindustaanīī-mēē . . . -koo kīaa kah^etee hāī*" for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, with their books closed. If any student does not answer in a reasonable time, do not allow hemming and hawing; call on another student. Make sure that every student speaks loud enough so that all can hear. Do not allow any mumbling. Any student who cannot give satisfactory answers needs more review of the *Basic Sentences*.

As you did in Unit 2, supply the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*,

when the Leader calls on you. Give your answers in a clear, loud voice, so that everyone can hear you.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section E3 of Unit 2. Have the students converse, first following closely the model of the conversations outlined below and then changing the situation slightly.

As you did in the Conversation in Section E3 of Unit 2, first go through the conversations outlined below, taking turns. As soon as you can speak the parts smoothly, pass to acting them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do it easily and smoothly.

Here are some suggestions:

1. Jim and Paul meet. Jim asks Paul about what he and his family do for a living.
2. Paul asks a stranger about his name and address, and the place where he works, and whether he likes his work.

3. Jim tells Paul about his friend. He wants Paul to meet his friend and his sister on a given day.
4. Do some simple arithmetic involving addition of numbers adding up to less than ten.

After you have practiced these conversations until you can do them easily and smoothly, change the situations somewhat and introduce more material from previous units. Use your imagination in thinking up various combinations of situations. For example, Jim may find out from Paul that they are both from the same town, that they have a mutual friend in Detroit or Calcutta, etc.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E.

FINDER LIST

This *Finder List* has all the new words and expressions used in this unit. These as well as those of the previous two units, are words and expressions which by this time you should know quite well. Verbs are given in the infinitive.

<i>abhii</i> <i>amriikan</i> <i>aur</i>	<i>a</i>	now	<i>baRaa</i>	big, elder
		American	<i>baRee</i>	big, elder
		and	<i>baRee</i>	big, elder
<i>bahen (-ii)</i>			<i>baRii</i>	big, elder
	<i>b</i>	sister	<i>bhaaii</i>	brother
			<i>bhii</i>	also, too

<i>ĥhooTaa</i>	ĥ	small, younger	<i>maalum</i>	m	apparent
<i>ĥhooTee</i>		small, younger	<i>mujh-koo</i>		I don't know
<i>ĥhooTii</i>		small, younger	<i>maalum nahīī</i>		
<i>doonōō</i>	d	both	<i>mangal</i>		Tuesday
<i>dukaan (-ii)</i>		shop	<i>-mēē</i>		in, on
<i>dukandaar</i>		the shopkeeper	<i>milnaa</i>		to meet
			<i>mujh-koo</i>		to me
<i>fauj (-ii)</i>	f	army		n	is not
<i>ham</i>	h	we	<i>nahīī</i>		
<i>ham-loog</i>		we	<i>peeśaa</i>	p	trade, profession
<i>iaa</i>	i	or		r	to live, to stay
<i>ituaar</i>		Sunday	<i>rah^enaa</i>		
<i>jaannaa</i>	j	to know	<i>saath</i>	s	with
<i>jahaazii</i>		sailor	<i>sipaahii</i>		soldier
<i>kaam karnaa</i>	k	to work	<i>soomuaar</i>		Monday
<i>kee</i>		that		u	his (polite)
<i>meeraa xiaal</i>		I think that	<i>un-kii</i>		
<i>hai kee</i>		with		x	thought, opinion
<i>-kee saath</i>			<i>xiaal</i>		beautiful, pretty
<i>larKkii (-ii)</i>	l	girl	<i>xubsuurat</i>		pleasure
<i>loog</i>		people	<i>xuśii (-ii)</i>		

SEEING THE SIGHTS

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: From this point on you will need special instructions only when new sections or procedures are introduced in the learning units. With other sections, simply follow the procedures which have been recommended in the first three units and the instructions provided for the group at the beginning of the sections.

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then work on the *Hints on Pronunciation* and after that go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 7A, beginning.

A Guide shows John and his Friend the Town.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

John:

hey there!
the market
how far

Hey there, how far is the market from here?

Guide:

Not very far.

the stranger

Are you a stranger?

For a little money I'll come with you.

AIDS TO LISTENING

bhaaii,
bazaar,
kitnii duur.

bhaaii, bazaar iahāā-see kitnii duur-hai.

bahot duur nahīī,

ajnabii.

kiaa aap ajnabii hāī?

thooree paisee-kee liīee aap-kee saath aaññ-gaa.

all
famous spots
And I'll show [you] all the sights.

John:
to give
We'll give you two rupees.

it takes (lit. is applied)
How much time does it take to go to the
market?

Guide:
only
It only takes ten minutes.

easily
to walk
We might as well walk.

John:
the automobile
more
We'd rather go by bus.

Guide:
Very well, sir.

by another road
But the bus goes by another road.

John:
O. K., then, let's walk!

sab.
maṣhuur jaghēē.
aur sab maṣhuur jaghēē dikhaaūū-gaa.

deenaa,
ham aap-koo doo rupaeē dēē-gee.
lagtaa hai,
bazaar-koo jaanee-kee liīee, kitnaa naḳi lagtaa hai.

sirf.
sirf das minaaT lagtee hāī.

aasaanii-see,
paidal jaanaa,
ham aasaanii-see paidal jaa saktee hāī.

mootar.
ziāadaa.
ham-loog, mootar-see jaanaa ziāadaa pasand kartee hāī.

bahot aḳḳhaa janaab,
duusrīi sarak-see.
leekin mootar duusrīi sarak-see jaatii hai.

too aao, paidal ḳalēē

Record 7B, beginning.

We haven't much time.

our train
the hour
Our train leaves in an hour.

Guide:
enough
then
Then you have enough time, sir.

John:
the high building
What's that high building?

Guide:
Where?
On the bank of the river?
That's the old mosque.

John:
Can we go inside?

Guide:
Yes, of course!
first
to take off one's shoes
But first take off your shoes.

54 [4-A]

ham-koo bahot uakt nahī.

*hamaarii gaarii,
ghanTaa.
hamaarii gaarii, eek ghanTee-mēē jāee-gii.*

*kaafi,
loo,
too aap-koo kaafi uakt hai. janaab,*

*ūūcii imaat.
uoo ūūcii imaat kiaa hai.*

*kahāā.
nadii-kee kinaaree-par?
uoo puraanii masjid hai.*

kiaa ham-loog, andar jaa saktee hāī?

xuśii-see.

*pah'lee,
juutaa utaarnaa.
leekin pah'lee juutaa utaariiee.*

the temple
never (lit. ever not)
Never go into a mosque or a temple with your
shoes on.

Look!

To your left is a very fine hotel.

from its roof
the city
From the roof we can see the whole town.

upstairs
Do you want to go upstairs?

John:
Is there an elevator in the hotel?

Record 8A, beginning.

Guide:
No sir.

John:
below
Then I'll stay downstairs.
tired
I'm very tired
But my friend will go with you.

Guide:
to come back
We'll come back soon.

*mandir,
kabhi nahī.
masjid iaa mandir-mēē, juutee-kee saath, kabhi nahī jaaīee.*

*deekhiīee.
aap-kee baaī taraf, bahot mašhuur hootal hai.*

*us-kii čhat-see,
šaher,
us-kii čhat-see, ham-loog sab šaher saktee hāī.*

*uupar.
kiaa aap uupar jaanaa čaah'tee hāī?*

kiaa hootal-mēē lift hai?

jii nahī saahab.

*niičee.
too māī niičee rahūū-gaa.
thakaa,
māī bahot thakaa hūū.
leekin meeraa doost, aap-kee saath jaaee-gaa.*

*uaapas aanaa,
ham jaldii uaapas aaēē-gee,*

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

The puff of breath. In Hindustani almost every consonant may or may not be accompanied by a strong puff of breath. This breathing sound will be written with *h*. It is important to pronounce the *h* clearly whenever you find it written. On the other hand, you must take great pains to avoid any audible breath where it is not written. This you may not find so easy in the case of *p*, *t*, *ṭ*, *ḱ*. You will notice that the sound here written *ph* in *phir* 'again' is rather like the English 'p' in 'pin' (only with still more breath to it) while the Hindustani *p* in *pāṇ* is quite close to the English 'p' in 'spin'.

Record 8A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 1

<i>pāṇ</i> 'five'	<i>phir</i> 'again'
<i>piṇee-kaa paanii</i> 'drinking water'	
<i>ṭaar</i> 'four'	<i>ḱhai</i> 'six'
<i>ṭaanaal</i> 'rice'	<i>ḱhat</i> 'the roof'
<i>dukaan</i> 'the shop'	<i>khaanaa</i> 'food'
<i>kab</i> 'when'	<i>dikhaaiiee</i> 'please show'

Both the front-*t* and the back-*ṭ* may, of course, or may not be accompanied by *h*.

Record 8A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 2

<i>taraf</i> 'direction'	<i>thakaa</i> 'tired'
<i>too</i> 'then'	<i>thookaa</i> 'little'
<i>beerāa</i> 'son'	<i>Thiik</i> 'correct'
<i>ḱhoorāa</i> 'small'	<i>Thairiiee</i> 'please wait'

The *h*-less sounds may sometimes seem to you to equal *b*'s, *j*'s, *g*'s, etc., rather than *p*'s, *ṭ*'s, *k*'s. In reality, *b*, *j*, *g*, etc., are quite distinct from *p*, *ṭ*, *k* in Hindustani.

b, *d*, *ṇ*, *j*, *g* may also be accompanied by a puff of breath. If so, at the very time when your lips or tongue make the sound in question, you force as much breath out of your lungs as you can. Be careful to have both actions at the same time rather than successively. In other words, try to say *ghar* (ONE syllable) rather than something like *gehar*.

Record 8A, after 3rd spiral.

Practice 3

<i>baaraa</i> 'twelve'	<i>bhaaii</i> 'brother'
<i>aadaab arz</i> 'how do you do'	<i>kabhii</i> 'ever'
<i>beerāa</i> 'son'	<i>bhii</i> 'also'
<i>deer</i> 'the while'	<i>dhiiree</i> 'slowly'
<i>ziadaa</i> 'more'	<i>siidhee</i> 'straight'
<i>duur</i> 'far'	<i>dhoonaa</i> 'to wash'
<i>bajee</i> 'o'clock'	<i>samjhee</i> (you) understood'
<i>gaakii</i> 'train'	<i>ghanṭaa</i> 'hour'
<i>gooṣṭ</i> 'meat'	<i>ghar</i> 'house'

You have doubtless observed that if such a breathed consonant (*rh, gh, etc.*) comes at the end of a syllable the *h* in it is often not audible.

Record 8A, after 4th spiral.

Practice 4

<i>aap-kee saath</i> 'with you'	<i>kuñh baat nahĩĩ</i> 'it doesn't matter'
<i>duudh</i> 'milk'	<i>samajhnaa</i> 'to understand'
<i>aarh</i> 'eight'	<i>māĩ deekhtaa hũũ</i> 'I see'

In other words, *saat* 'seven' and (*aap-kee*) *saath* 'with (you)' often sound alike.

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open, and once with your book closed.

3. Check Yourself

Are you taking every opportunity to practice your Hindustani by talking with other members of the group or with Hindustani speaking people whom you may meet?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Work through the following as recommended in the previous units.

A. PARTICLES

<i>hindustaanii-mēē</i>	'IN Hindustani'
<i>kaalij-mēē</i>	'IN college'
<i>fauj-mēē</i>	'IN the army'
<i>ituaar-mēē</i>	'(ON) Sunday'
<i>mangal-mēē</i>	'(ON) Tuesday'
<i>hooTal-mēē</i>	'IN the hotel'
<i>mandir-mēē</i>	'IN the temple'
<i>amriikaa-mēē</i>	'IN America'
<i>kahāũ-see</i>	'FROM where, where FROM'
<i>iahāũ-see</i>	'FROM here'

<i>amriikaa-see</i>	'FROM America'
<i>aap-see mil-kar</i>	'having met ('WITH') you'
<i>aasaanii-see</i>	'WITH ease; easily'
<i>mootar-see</i>	'BY car'
<i>xuñii-see</i>	'WITH pleasure'
<i>raam laal-koo kaam hai</i>	'To Mr. Raam I aal there is work, i.e. he HAS to do.'
<i>aap-koo jaantaa hũũ</i>	'I know you'
<i>aap-koo doo ruparē dēē-gee</i>	'We'll give ('TO') you two rupees'
<i>bazaar-koo jaanaa</i>	'to go TO the market'
<i>ham-koo bahot uakt nahĩĩ</i>	'TO us there is no time; we have no time.'
<i>aap-koo kaafii uakt hai.</i>	'TO you there is enough time; you HAVE enough time.'

The syllables *-mēē*, *-see*, and *-koo* and a few others will be referred to as PARTICLES. *-mēē* means, roughly, 'in'; *-see* 'from' or 'with'; and *-koo* 'to'. But unlike these English words, Hindustani particles always come AFTER the words with which they belong: *hootal-mēē*, but 'IN the hotel'.

As to the meanings, notice that Hindustani speakers often picture relationships in space and time differently from the way English speakers do. Notice *mangal-mēē*, 'IN Tuesday', where we say 'ON (or even without ON) Tuesday'. (More frequent is *mangal-koo*.) Notice the way in which we translate *ham-koo bahot uakt nahī* (literally: 'to us no time is, that is, we HAVE no time). In Hindustani you 'meet WITH someone' :*aap-see mil-kar*. Finally, notice the phrase *aap-koo jaantaa hūū* where we simply say 'I know you'.

B. THE MASCULINE OBLIQUE CASE OF NOUNS

<i>ek ghanTee-mēē</i>	'IN one hour'
<i>kinaaree-par</i>	'ON the bank'

The second example contains another particle, *-par* 'upon'.

The words for 'hour' and 'bank, shore' by themselves are masculine nouns in *-aa*: *ghanTaa*, *kinaaraa*. With a few exceptions, masculine nouns in *-aa* change their *-aa* into *-ee* before particles. This particular form we shall call the OBLIQUE case. Notice that *amriikaa* 'America' is one of the exceptions: *amriikaa-mēē* 'in America'. We

may say that in *amriikaa*, as well as in all the other words listed in Comment A, the oblique case has no special form.

C. -KAA 'BELONGING TO ...'

<i>piinee-kaa paanii</i>	'water belonging to drinking'
<i>bhaaii-kaa doost</i>	'the friend belonging to my brother, the friend of my brother, my brother's friend'.
<i>khaanee-kii dukaan</i>	'a shop belonging to food, a food shop, a restaurant'.

-kaa, *-kii* are particles meaning 'belonging to'. Like class 2 adjectives, they agree with the noun which they describe: *piinee-kaa paanii* 'drinking water', just like *ačhaa paanii* 'good water' (*paanii*, then, is masculine); *khaanee-kii dukaan* 'eating shop', just like *barii dukaan* 'large shop' (*dukaan* is feminine).

The noun by which *-kaa* or *-kii* is followed, behaves like any noun with a particle following it: *bhaaii-kaa* 'belonging to the brother' just like *bhaaii-see* 'from the brother'; *khaanee-kii dukaan* 'shop belonging to food, shop for food, restaurant' with the oblique case of *khaanaa*, just like *khaanee-mēē* 'in the food'. *piinee-kaa paanii* 'water belonging to drinking, drinking water' contains the oblique case of *piinaa* 'to drink; the drinking'. As you can see, infinitives in *-naa* are masculine nouns.

D. MASCULINE OBLIQUE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>meeree ħhooTee bhaaii-kaa doost</i>	'the friend of ('belonging to') my younger brother'.
<i>aap-kee baRee bhaaii-kaa doost</i>	'the friend of ('belonging to') your younger brother'
<i>nadii-kee kinaaree-par</i>	'on the bank of the river'

Class 2 adjectives (including *-kaa*) describing a masculine noun plus a particle change *-aa* into *-ee*. Compare:

<i>meeraa ħhooTaa bhaaii</i>	'my younger brother'
<i>meeree ħhooTee bhaaii-kaa</i>	'of my younger brother'
<i>nadii-kaa kinaaraa</i>	'the bank of the river'
<i>nadii-kee kinaaree-par</i>	'on the bank of the river'

There is no change in feminine adjectives:

<i>duusrīi sarak</i>	'the other street'
<i>duusrīi sarak-see</i>	'by another street'

E. VARIOUS ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS OF *-KAA*.

<i>nadii-kaa kinaaraa</i>	'river bank', 'bank of the river'
<i>meere bhaaii-kaa doost</i>	'my brother's friend'

-kaa, *-kii* is translated into idiomatic English in various ways. Three common translations are represented in the above examples: compound word; "of;"

'genitive' in "s." Notice that in Hindustani, the word which is modified by the rest of the phrase comes last: in *nadii-kaa kinaaraa* (no matter whether you translate it by saying 'the river bank' or 'the bank of the river') it is *kinaaraa* which is modified or described by *nadii-kaa*; therefore it comes at the end, just as in *baRaa kinaaraa* 'big shore' or *xubsuurat kinaaraa* 'beautiful shore'.

F. SUBJUNCTIVE AND FUTURE.

<i>māi kab aaũũ</i>	'When should I come?'
<i>māi aaũũ-gaa</i>	'I shall come'
<i>mašhuur jagħēē dikħaaũũ-gaa</i>	'I'll show you the sights'
<i>too māi niũēē rahũũ-gaa</i>	'Then I'll stay down-stairs'
<i>meeraa doost jaace-gaa</i>	'my friend will go'
<i>ham jaldii uapās aaēē-gee</i>	'we shall come back soon'

The verbal stem with the ending *-ũũ* results in a form expressing a cautious statement: 'I may do so-and-so': *aaũũ* 'I may come', *jaaũũ* 'I may go', *deekħũũ* 'I may see', *karũũ* 'I may do'. It often comes in hesitant questions: 'Should I come?' etc. We may call this and other forms the SUBJUNCTIVES.

If *māi* 'I' is referred to, the subjunctive ends in *-ũũ*.

If a noun in the singular, or a pronoun meaning 'he, she, it' is referred to, the subjunctive ends in *-ee*: *aaee* 'he may come'; *meeraa doost jaace* 'my friend might go'.

The plural form of the subjunctive is in *-ēē*: *ham uapās aaēē* 'we might come back'.

By adding the adjective *-gaa* (masc.), *-gii* (fem.), the singular subjunctives are made into statements about the FUTURE: *rahũũ-gaa* 'I shall stay, I am going to stay', *meeraa doost jaaee-gaa* 'my friend will go'; *māi rahũũ-gii* 'I (woman speaking) will be staying (for some time)', *gaaRii jaaee-gii* 'the train will go, is going to leave'.

The plural form in *-ẽẽ* adds, of course, *-gee* (and, for the feminine, *-gii*): *ham aaẽẽ-gee* 'We shall come'. (A woman would say: *ham aaẽẽ-gii*.)

G. TOO.

1. *too māĩ niiĩee rahũũ-gaa* '(There is no elevator in the house;) I'll stay downstairs, then'
too aap-koo kaafii uakt hai '(Your train is going to leave in two hours;) then you have enough time'
too paidal calẽẽ 'O.K., then let's walk'
too Thairũũ-gaa 'O.K., I'll wait'

too is an extremely common word. Its place is in continuous narrative or in dialogue where it is used to indicate a conclusion drawn from what precedes (nearest English equivalent: 'then'), often coupled with agreement to the other fellow's statement ('all right; then ...').

2. *too kīaa aap-kaa naam Smith hai?* 'your name is Smith, isn't it; isn't your name Smith?'

In a yes-or-no question with rising voice ("?"), *too* means that the speaker expects an affirmative answer. He asks the question just to have his guess confirmed ("I seem to remember your name is Smith. Is that right?"). English uses phrases like 'isn't it, doesn't one, aren't they, won't she' in such cases.

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study

(Individual Study)

Review this *Word Study* by reading aloud all of the Hindustani expressions. Then cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item. Finally, cover the Hindustani and see if you can say each Hindustani expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning and examples of points in the *Word Study*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A, and read them aloud covering up the English. Note any words or phrases you are not sure about, and, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences*, uncover the English and look up the meaning of what you did not get. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expression you think most suitable:

1. A man asks you whether you are a stranger:
 - a. *kiaa aap bhii jahaazii hāī?*
 - b. *kiaa aap ajnabii hāī?*
 - c. *aap kahāū rah^etee hāī.*
2. He tells you he'll accompany you for a little money:
 - a. *bazaar-koo jaanee-kee liiee das minar lagtee hāī.*
 - b. *thookee paisee-kee liiee aap-kee saath aaūū-gaa.*
 - c. *aap kab khaanee-kee liiee aa saktee hāī.*
3. You ask him how far the market place is from here:
 - a. *bazaar iahāū-see kitnii duur hai.*
 - b. *bazaar-koo jaanee-kee liiee kitnaa uakt lagtaa hai.*
 - c. *bazaar kahāū hai.*
4. He says you can easily walk:
 - a. *ham-loog mootar-see jaanaa ziaadaa pasand kartee hāī.*

- b. *hamaarii gaarii eek ghanTEE-mēē jaaee-gii.*
- c. *ham aasaanii-see paidal jaa saktee hāī.*

5. You answer that you're very tired:
 - a. *māī bahot thakaa hūū.*
 - b. *māī fauj-mēē hūū.*
 - c. *māī xuś hūū.*
6. He says that you have enough time:
 - a. *aap-koo kaafii uakt hai.*
 - b. *ham-koo bahot uakt nahīī.*
 - c. *kiaa uakt hai.*
7. You ask him what that high building is:
 - a. *kiaa un-kii dukaan bahot barii hai?*
 - b. *sab maśhuur jaghēē dikhaaūū-gaa.*
 - c. *uoo ūūcīī imaarat kiaa hai.*
8. He says it is a famous temple:
 - a. *uoo puraaniī masjid hai.*
 - b. *maśhuur mandir hai.*
 - c. *bahot maśhuur hootal hai.*
9. You ask if you can go inside:
 - a. *kiaa raam laal andar hāī.*
 - b. *andar aīīee.*
 - c. *kiaa māī andar jaa saktaa hūū.*
10. He tells you to take off your shoes:
 - a. *juutaa utaariīee.*
 - b. *juutee-kee saath jaaīīee.*
 - c. *ham jaldii uapaas aaēē-gee.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for the last exercise in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. Other members of the group will criticize your choice if they disagree with it. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the correct Hindustani for each English expression in the *Word Study*, without having to read it from the book. If you cannot do this easily, it means you need to put in more work on the *Word Study*. The Group Leader will give the English and call on different members of the group for the Hindustani.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again with books open, following the same plan as before, imitating carefully and keeping in mind the meaning of everything you say. Finally, take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 8B, beginning.

1. Jim addresses a stranger on the street.

Jim: *maaf kiijiiee janaab.*
šaher iahāā-see kitnii duur hai.

Das: *mujh-koo maaluum nahī.*
māī bhīī ajnabīī hūū, leekin meerīī bahen, iahāā
rah'tīī hai.
uoo aap-koo sarak dikhaaee-gīī.

Jim: *bahot meherbaanīī.*
kiaa māī aap-kee saath aa saktaa hūū?

Das: *xušīī-see. aoō čalēē.*

Jim: *māī aap-see mil-kar bahot xuš hūū.*
meeraa naam Potter hai.
māī amriikan sipaahīī hūū,
māī šaher deekhnaa čaah'taa hūū.
kiaa iahāā-see bahot duur hai?

Das: *īee meerīī bahen hai.*

bahen: *šaher-koo jaanee-kee liīee, eek ghanTaa lagtaa hai.*
leekin aap mootar-see jaa saktee hāī.
mootar-see sirf das mināt lagēē-gee.

Jim: *kiaa bahot paisaa lagtaa hai?*

*bahen: mujh-koo maaluum nahī.
māī kabhī nahī mootar-see jaatī hū.
leekin meeraa xiaal hai, kee bahot paisaa nahī
lagtaa.*

Jim: *šukriiāa.*

*bahen: kučh baat nahī,
xudaa haafiz,*

Record 8B, after 1st spiral.

2. Jim and his friend enter a store and address Mr. Das, the shopkeeper.

Jim: *maaf kījiiee.
ham-koo bahot uakt nahī.
kiaa aap ham-koo, piinec-kaa paantī dee saktee hāī?*

Das: *bahot xušii-see.
leekin aap-koo kiaa takliif hai.*

Jim: *hamaarii gaarii, eek ghanTee-mēē jaaee-gii.
aur isTeešan iahā-see bahot duur hai.*

Das: *meeraa xiaal hai kee aap bahot thakee hāī.
thoorēe paisee-ke liiee, aap meerī mootar-see jaa
saktee hāī.
aur māī aap-kee saath aaūū-gaa.*

Jim: *ham-loog bahot paisaa nahī dee saktee.
kiaa doo rupae Thiik hāī?*

Das: *Thiik. thoorī deer Thairīiee.
mootar-see ham, das mināT-mēē isteešan-koo
aaēē-gee.*

Record 8B, after 2nd spiral.

3. Das offers to show Jim the town.

Jim: *salaam janaab.*

Das: *salaam. janaab, kiaa aap ajnabī hāī?*

Jim: *māī sirf eek ghanTee-see šaher-mēē hū.*

Das: *kiaa aap mašhuur jaghēē deekhnaa čaah^{te}ee hāī?*

Jim: *meherbaanī. kiaa uo imaat mandir hai?*

Das: *jī nahī. uo eek choōTī masjid hai.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

As in previous units, the Group Leader will call on various members of the group to give the Hindustani expressions which correspond to the English in the *Basic Sentences*.

3. Conversation

Work through the following outlined conversations, taking parts. Act them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do them easily and smoothly. When the outlined conversations go well, then change the situations somewhat. You now have more material which you can work into additional conversations. Invent topics as you did for the previous units.

1. A meets B on the street. They greet each other, and A asks B where he is living now. B says he is living in the hotel Royal. A asks him where the hotel is, and B points it out to him; it is that high building on the bank of the river. A asks him whether he likes the hotel, and B answers that he does: the food is good and from the roof he can see the whole city. He thinks the city is very beautiful. A asks him whether his wife is here with him, and B answers that she is staying with his sister.
2. A halts B on the street. He begs his pardon and asks for directions. He says that he is an American

sailor and that he doesn't speak Hindustani very well. B agrees to speak very slowly and asks what he can do for A. A asks him the way to the station. He says that his train will leave in nine minutes. B tells him that the station is not far. Just go straight ahead and he'll come there in three minutes. A thanks him, and they say goodbye.

3. A and B discuss their plans for the next weekend. A says that he'll go to the city on Sunday. He wants to see the sights. B asks him questions: how is he going to the city, by car or on foot; how much time does it take to go to the city; where will he eat; will he eat in the hotel, etc.
4. A enters a hotel and tells the clerk that he thinks his friend is living here. The clerk asks the friend's name and tells him to wait a little while—he'll see. He comes back with the answer that A's friend is living here, but he is not in at the moment, is there anything he can do for A? A says yes he wants to wash and asks where the toilet is. The clerk tells him the toilet is upstairs.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

<i>aaoo</i>	<i>a</i>	come on!	<i>jumraat (-ii)</i>		Thursday
<i>aasaanii (-ii)</i>		the ease	<i>juutaa</i>		shoe, the pair of shoes
<i>aasaanii-see</i>		easily	<i>kaafii</i>	<i>k</i>	enough, sufficient
<i>ajnabii</i>		stranger	<i>kabhii</i>		ever
	<i>b</i>		<i>kabhii nahīṛ</i>		never
<i>bazaar</i>		market	<i>kinaaraa</i>		the bank, the shore
<i>budh (-ii)</i>		Wednesday		<i>l</i>	
	<i>ḥ</i>		<i>lagnaa</i>		to be used, to be applied
<i>ḥalnaa</i>		to go, to move	<i>lifr</i>		the elevator
<i>ḥhat (-ii)</i>		the roof		<i>m</i>	
	<i>d</i>		<i>mandir</i>		temple
<i>deenaa</i>		to give	<i>masjid (-ii)</i>		mosque
<i>duur</i>		far	<i>maṣhuur</i>		famous
<i>duusraa</i>		second, other	<i>minaT</i>		minute
	<i>g</i>		<i>mootar (-ii)</i>		automobile, bus
<i>ghanTaa</i>		hour		<i>n</i>	
	<i>h</i>		<i>nadii (-ii)</i>		the river
<i>hamaaraa</i>		our	<i>niiḥee</i>		below, downstairs
	<i>i</i>			<i>p</i>	
<i>imaarat (-ii)</i>		building	<i>pah^{le}</i>		first
	<i>j</i>		<i>paidal</i>		on foot
<i>jaghēṛ (-ii)</i>		places, spots	<i>paidal jaanaa</i>		to walk
<i>jumaa</i>		Friday	<i>-par</i>		on
			<i>puraanaa</i>		old (of things)

<i>sab</i>	<i>s</i>	all, the whole	<i>uaapas</i>	<i>u</i>	back
<i>saniicar</i>		Saturday	<i>uaapas aanaa</i>		to come back
<i>sarak</i> (-ii)		street	<i>utaarnaa</i>		to take off
<i>sirf</i>		only	<i>ũũčaa</i>		high
	<i>š</i>		<i>uupar</i>		above, upstairs
<i>šaher</i>		city, town		<i>z</i>	
	<i>t</i>		<i>ziaadaa</i>		more
<i>thakaa</i>		tired			

IN THE STORE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 9A, beginning.

In a store Jack is talking to the Shopkeeper, Mr. Das.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

Jack:
some food
to buy
I want to buy some food for a friend.
He's in the hospital.
at you
What have you got?
Das:
fruit of all kinds
We have all kinds of fruit today.
perhaps
the pomegranate
Perhaps your friend likes pomegranates.

AIDS TO LISTENING

kuḥh khaanaa,
xariidnaa,
māī eek doost-kee liīee, kuḥh khaanaa xariidnaa ṣaah'taa hūū.
uoo aspataal-mēē hāī.
aap-kee paas,
aap-kee paas kiaa hai.

sab ḳisim-kee phal.
aaj hamaaree paas, sab ḳisim-kee phal hāī.
ṣaaed,
anaar,
ṣaaed aap-kee doost anaar pasand karēē.

Jack:
 fresh
 Is the fruit fresh?
 the heat *or* summer
 they get bad
 I understand that in the summer fruit spoils very
 quickly.

Das:
 always
 In this store the fruit is always fresh.
 every day
 the farmers
 the village
 to bring
 Every day the farmers bring it from the village.

Jack:
 near the city
 Is the village near this city?

Das:
 why
 to ask
 Why do you ask?

Record 9B, beginning.

Jack:
 because
 next week
 Because my friend will come out of the hospital
 next week.

taazaa.
kiaa phal taazee hāi?
garmii,
xaraab hootee hāi.
māi samajhtua hūū, kee garmii-mēē phal, jaldii xaraab hootee
hāi.

hameešaa.
is dukaan-mēē, phal hameešaa taazee hāi.
rooz-rooz.
kisaan-loog,
gaaōō,
laanaa,
rooz-rooz, kisaan-loog, uoo gaaōō-see laatee hāi.

šaher-kee kariib,
kiaa gaaōō is šaher-kee kariib hai?

kiōō.
puučhnaa,
aap kiōō puučhtee hāi.

kiōō-kee,
duusree haftee-mēē,
kiōō-kee meerce doost, duusree haftec-mēē, aspataal-see aāēē-
gee.

And then he wants to go to the country with me.

Das:
the father
Then you can stay with my father.

Jack:
Is your father a farmer?

Das:
No sir, but he has a hotel.

Jack:
Good, perhaps we'll stay at his hotel.

Jack:
expensive
Is this fruit very expensive?

Das:
to take
No, for a pomegranate I only charge one anna.

Jack:
the dozen
please give
Give me a dozen then.

Das:
Yes sir.
anything else
Do you want anything else?

aur ar uo meeree saath, gaaōō-koo jaanaa ṛaah'ṛee hai.

*baap.
too aap, meeree baap-kee saath rah' saktee hāi.*

kīaa aap-kee baap kisaan hāi?

jii nahīi janaab. leekin un-kee paas, hootal hai.

ačḥaa. šaaed ham-loog un-kee hootal-mēṛ rahē.

*māh'gaa.
kīaa iee phal bahot māh'gee hāi?*

*leenaa.
jii nahīi. anaar-kaa sirf, eek aanaa leetaa hūū.*

*darjan,
diījiiee.
too mujh-koo eek darjan diījiiee.*

ačḥaa janaab,

*kučh aur?
kīaa aap, kučh aur ṛaah'ṛee hāi?*

Jack
other
to sell
What other kinds of fruit do you sell?

Das:
the watermelon
We have very good watermelons.

Jack:
No oranges?

Das:
Not today sir.

Record 10A, beginning.

Jack:
Too bad
Then I'll just buy a dozen pomegranates and
two watermelons.

to send
Can you send 'em?

Das:
to whom
Whom should I send 'em to?
To you or to your friend?

Jack:
Please send them to the hospital.

Das:
Certainly sir.

Jack:
Goodbye.

70 [5-A]

duusraa.
beechnaa.
aaṗ kis duusree kisim-kee phal beeṛtee hāī.

tarbuuz,
hamaaree paas, bahot aṛṛhee tarbuuz hāī.

kiaa kuṅh narangiṁṁā nahīī?

aaṗ nahīī janaab.

afsoos-kī baat.
too māī, sirf eek darjan anaar, aur doo tarbuuz, xariidūṁ-gaa.

bheejnaa.
kiaa aaṗ uoṁ bheej saktee hāī?

kis-koo.
kis-koo bheejūṁ.
aaṗ-koo? iaṁ aaṗ-kee doost-koo.

aspataal-koo bheejīee.

zaruur janaab.

salaam.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Nasalization. When ~ is written over a vowel symbol, you will find that the vowel sound is pronounced through the nose. Be careful to keep these sounds distinct from the ordinary vowels:

Record 10A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 1

<i>pāāṭ</i> 'five'	<i>aap</i> 'you'
<i>jaghēē</i> 'places'	<i>baRee</i> 'big ones'
<i>nahīī</i> 'not'	<i>kabhīī</i> 'ever'
<i>doonōō</i> 'both'	<i>too</i> 'then'
<i>gaaōō</i> 'village'	<i>aaoo</i> 'come on!'
<i>ūūṛaa</i> 'high'	<i>duudh</i> 'milk'
<i>hāī</i> 'are'	<i>hai</i> 'is'

Neither must these nasalized vowels be confused with ordinary vowels plus *n*:

Record 10A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 2

<i>kahāā</i> 'where?'	<i>dukaan</i> 'shop'
<i>nahīī</i> 'not'	<i>tiin</i> 'three'

Before a *g* or a *k*, however, a nasalized vowel may seem to blend into something like a very short "n" as in 'finger' or 'rank':

Record 10A, after 3rd spiral.

Practice 3

<i>aaūū</i> 'I might come'	<i>aaūū-gaa</i> 'I shall come'
<i>rahēē</i> '(we) might stay'	<i>rahēē-gee</i> '(we) shall stay'
<i>kiōō</i> 'why?'	<i>kiōō-kee</i> 'because'

(Note: in words like *gaaōō* 'village', *aaēē-gee* '(we) shall come' you will often hear the entire vowel group spoken through the nose: *gāāōō*, *āāēē-gee*.)

2. The *h*-sound. *h*, as you know, is strongly pronounced wherever you find it written. Compare the sound of the following words:

Record 10A, after 4th spiral.

Practice 4

<i>mašhuur</i> 'famous'	<i>xuubsunrat</i> 'beautiful'
<i>saaheb</i> 'gentleman'	<i>šaaed</i> 'perhaps'
<i>sipaahīī</i> 'soldier'	<i>bhaaīī</i> 'brother'
<i>paRhnaa</i> 'to read, study'	<i>laRkaa</i> 'boy'

At the end of a syllable and after a vowel, one hears a whispered vowel with the *h*. The *h* is here written *h^c* or *h^o*:

Record 10A, after 5th spiral.

Practice 5

<i>aap kiaa ṣaaḥ^ctee hāī</i> 'what do you want?'
<i>ṣaaḥ^cnaa</i> 'to want'
<i>*bah^cteeraa</i> 'very much'

*This word is selected at this point for pronunciation practice only.

A short *a* before *h*^e sounds much like the English vowel in "apple", "that".

Record 10A, after 6th spiral.

Practice 6

kiaa kah^etee hāi 'what do you say?'
rah^enaa ṣaah^etaa hūū 'I want to stay'
pah^elee 'first'

In the following words it is really the entire first syllable (including the *h*) that is spoken through the

nose (*māh^e*; *pāh^o*). You can hear the "n"-glide immediately preceding the *g* of *māh^egee*.

Record 10A, after 7th spiral.

Practice 7

māh^egee 'expensive ones'
**pāh^eṣaa* 'he arrived'.

Now go twice through the *Basic Sentences* individually, once with book open and once with book closed.

*This word is selected at this point for pronunciation practice only.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. PLURAL OF MASCULINE AA-NOUNS.

<i>andaa</i> 'egg'	<i>andee</i> 'eggs'
<i>ek aanaa</i> 'one anna'	<i>doo aanee</i> 'two annas'
<i>meeraa larkaa parhtaa</i> hai	<i>uoo meerce larkee</i> hāi
'my boy studies'	'these are my boys'
<i>paisaa</i> 'money, pice (coin)'	<i>paisee</i> 'money, pice
	(coins)'

Most masculine nouns in *-aa* change *-aa* to *-ee* for the PLURAL (meaning: "more than one thing"): *larkaa* . . . hai vs. *larkee* . . . hāi. For most of these words, the oblique case singular is, then, like the straight case plural: *andee-par* 'on an egg', *andee* 'eggs'.

All other masculine nouns have no special form for the straight plural: *phal taasee hāi* 'the fruit is (literally: the fruits are) fresh'; *ham-loog amriikan sipaahii hāi* 'we are American soldiers'.

B. RUPIAA, RUPAEE.

ham aap-koo doo rupae dēē-gee 'we'll give you two rupees'

The *-ee* forms of *rupiaa* (also *rupaiaa*) 'rupee' are: *rupae* 'rupees', *ek rupae-see* 'from one rupee'.

C. POLITE PLURAL

ṣaaed aap-kee doost anaar pasand karēē 'perhaps your friend likes (literally: "like") pomegranates'

ice *saahēb* *kaun* *hāī* 'who is (literally: "are") this gentleman?'
meerec *doost* *duusree* *hafteē-mēē* *aspataal-see* *aaēē-gee*
 'my friend will come out of the hospital next week'
kiaa *aap-kee* *baap* *kisaan* *hāī*? 'is (literally: "are") your father a farmer?'

In POLITE USAGE many singular nouns, such as *doost* 'friend', *saahēb* 'gentleman', *baap* 'father', *bhaaii* 'brother' (if referring to an elder brother) are frequently used as if they were plurals, with plural adjectives and verbs.

D. OBLIQUE FORMS OF PRONOUNS.

1. *us-kaa* *daam* 'the price of that, its price'
us-kii *ēhat* 'the roof of that, its roof'
aap *un-koo* *jaantee* *hāī* 'you know ("to") them'
un-kaa *naam* 'the name of those, their name'
un-kii *dukaan* 'the shop of them, their shop'
un-koo *milnaa* *ēaah'tee* *hāī* '(we) want to meet ("to") those, to meet them'
in-see *mili'tee* 'meet ("with") them'
in-kaa *naam* 'the name of these, their name'
kis-koo *bhecjūū* 'to whom shall I send'

The pronouns *ice* 'this, these', *uoo* 'that, those', and *kaun* 'who, which?' when followed by a particle have special (oblique case) forms. Remember:

<i>ice</i> 'this'	<i>uoo</i> 'that'	<i>kaun</i> 'who?'
<i>is-koo</i> 'to this'	<i>us-koo</i> 'to that'	<i>kis-koo</i> 'to whom?'
<i>ice</i> 'these'	<i>uoo</i> 'those'	
<i>in-koo</i> 'to these'	<i>un-koo</i> 'to those'	

There is no distinction of gender for these words.

2. *is* *dukaan-mēē* 'in this shop'
is *šaher-mēē* 'in this city'
us *šaher-kee* *ķariib* 'near that city'
kis *ķusim-kaa* 'of which kind?'

ice, *uoo* and *kaun* may also be used as adjectives. In that case, they appear in the special oblique case forms when the noun to which they belong is followed by a particle.

E. "MY, OUR, HIS, HER, ITS, YOUR."

meeree *bhaaii* 'my brothers' (or: 'my brother' polite)
us-kee *bhaaii* 'the brother(s) of that, his or her brother(s)'
hamaarii *gaarii* 'our train'
in-kii *gaarii* 'the train of these, their train'
meerii *ēhat* 'my roof'
us-kii *ēhat* 'the roof of that, its roof'

For 'my (mine)' and 'our (ours)' Hindustani has the simple equivalents *meeraa* (-ee, -ii), *hamaaraa* (-ee, -ii). However, for 'his, her (hers), its', Hindustani speakers say something like 'of this, of that'; for 'their': 'of them'.

Similarly, 'your (yours)' is *aap-kaa* (-*ee*, -*ii*), as for instance in *aap-kaa naam kīaa hai* 'what is your name'.

F. EXPRESSIONS FOLLOWING -*EE*, -*KEE*

hamaaree paas 'at us'
meeree saath 'with me'
aap-kee liīee 'for you'
aap-kee saath 'with you'
aap-kee paas 'at you'
un-kee paas 'at them'
aap-kee baāī taraf 'to your left'
khaanee-kee liīee 'for food, for eating, in order to eat'
thooRee paisē-kee liīee 'for a little money'
juutee-kee saath 'with your shoes'
doost-kee liīee 'for a friend'
šaher-kee kārīib 'near the city'

If you have understood the parallelism between

meeree ghar-mēē 'in my house'
aap-kee ghar-mēē 'in your house'
doost-kee ghar-mēē 'in a friend's house',

you will have no trouble in understanding the above examples. The expressions

liīee 'for'
paas 'at'
saath 'together with'
kārīib 'near'
baāī taraf 'to the left'

have an adjective in -*ee* before them, just as though they were masculine oblique nouns. Compare *hamaaree liīee* '(for) our sake' with *hamaaree ghar-mēē* 'in our house', etc. (Note, of course, that *māī* and *ham* must not be followed by -*kee*, but that *hamaaree* and *meeree* are used instead.)

Note the English equivalent for *khaanee-kee liīee*, 'for eating, (in order) to eat'. Any other infinitive can be treated this way: *piīnee-kee liīee* 'in order to drink', *dhoonee-kee liīee* 'in order to wash', *deekhnee-kee liīee* 'in order to see', *dikhaanee-kee liīee* 'in order to point out'.

Also note the English equivalent of *aap-kee paas kīaa hai* 'at you what is', i.e.: 'what do you have, what have you got'.

G. *AUR*.

*kučh aur čaah*tee hāī?* 'Do you want anything else?'

The word *aur* ordinarily means 'and', and when so used is not particularly stressed. The same word, however, is used in the meaning 'else, more' in such phrases as *kooī aur* 'someone else', *eek aur dārjan* 'one more dozen', *kučh aur pēšaa* 'some other trade'. In this case, *aur* is, of course, more strongly stressed.

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hindustani, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hindustani. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud the following and pick out the expressions you think most suitable.

1. Your friend says he wants to buy some pomegranates:
 - a. *māi kuḥ khaanaa xariidnaa ḥaah'taa hūū.*
 - b. *māi phal bahot pasand kartaa hūū.*
 - c. *māi kuḥ anaar xariidnaa ḥaah'taa hūū.*
2. You ask for whom?
 - a. *kis-kee liice.*
 - b. *kis-kee paas.*
 - c. *kis-kee saath.*

3. He says for his sister:

- a. *larkii-kee saath.*
- b. *bahen-kee liice.*
- c. *biuui-kee paas.*

4. He asks whether pomegranates are expensive:

- a. *kiaa anaar taazee hāi?*
- b. *kiaa anaar māh'gee hāi?*
- c. *kiaa anaar xaraab hāi?*

5. You ask him how much money he has:

- a. *aap-kee paas kitnaa paisaa hai.*
- b. *kiaa aap kuḥ paisaa ḥaah'tee hāi?*
- c. *aap-kee paas kiaa hai.*

6. He answers that he has enough money:

- a. *meeree paas kuḥ paisaa nahī.*
- b. *meeree paas kaafi paisaa hai.*
- c. *meeree paas sirf doo aanee hāi.*

7. You say let's go:

- a. *kiaa aap jaanaa ḥaah'tee hāi?*
- b. *aap kab jaa saktee hāi.*
- c. *aaoo ḥalē.*

Here are some sentences with blanks in them. The English equivalent of the whole sentence is given; figure out what words should go in the blanks:

8. Can you see it?

kiaa aap uoo ----- saktee hāĩ?

9. Do you want to go?

kiaa aap ----- ĩaah^etee hāĩ?

10. My sister wants to come.

meerii bahen ----- hai

11. I can send it.

māĩ uoo ----- saktaa hūũ

12. With whom do you live?

aap ----- -kee saath rah^etee hāĩ

13. For whom is this?

ĩee ----- -kee liĩee hai

14. Will she come with you?

kiaa uoo aap-kee saath ----- ?

15. He will stay here.

uoo iahāũ -----.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up.

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hindustani for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat each conversation, if necessary; then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 10B, beginning.

1. A wife in the hospital.

Jim: *aadaab-arz janaab.*
aap kaisce hāī.

Das: *meherbaanii. māī bahot ačhaa hūū.*

Jim: *kiaa aap-kīī bīiuii bhīī ačhīī hāī?*

Das: *jīī nahīī.*
uoo aspataal-mēē hai.

Jim: *afsoos-kīī baat.*
un-koo kiaa takliif hai.

Das: *māī nahīī jaantaa.*
leekin uoo eek haftee-see aspataal-mēē hai.
māī rooz-rooz, us-koo, taazee phal laataa hūū.

Jim: *kiaa māī un-kee liice kučh kar saktaa hūū?*
šaaed uoo kučh ačhaa khaanaa pasand karēē.
māī un-koo, taazee anDee, aur duudh bheejūū-gaa.

Das: *bahot meherbaanii janaab.*

Jim: *kiaa māī aap-kīī bīiuii-koo deekh saktaa hūū?*

Das: *aaj nahīī.*
kiōō-kee uoo bahot thakīī hai.
leekin šaaed us-koo, duusree haftee-mēē, mil saktee hai.

Record 10B, after 1st spiral.

2. The neighborhood grocery.

hamaaree ghar-kee kariib, phal-kīī dukaan hai.
rooz-rooz, meerīī bahen, is dukaan-mēē, phal xariidīī hai.
phal bahot ačheec hāī, aur māh'gee nahīī.

dukandaar-kee paas, sab kisim-kee phal hāī.
garmīī-mēē uoo bahot tarbuuz beečtaa hai.
kiōō-kee loog, tarbuuz khaanaa pasand kartee hāī.
leekin māī anaar ziaadaa pasand kartaa hūū.
too meerīī bahen, rooz-rooz, eek darjan lectīī hai.

Record 10B, after 2nd spiral.

3. Planning a trip to the country.

is garmīī-mēē, māī aur meeree doost, gaaōō-koo jaaēē-gee.
ham jaldīī iahāū-see jaaēē-gee,
aur mooTar-see duusree šaher-koo jaaēē-gee.
uahāū ham, kučh khaanaa xariidēē-gee.
gaōō us šaher-kee kariib hai.
aur mooTar-see sirf das minar lagēē-gee.
too ham giaraa bajee gaōō-mēē aaēē-gee.
us gaaōō-mēē, bahot kisaan rah'lee hāī.
un-kee paas bahot paisaa nahīī.
leekin xušīī-see uoo ham-koo taazee phal dēē-gee.
māī gaaōō bahot pasand kartaa hūū.

Record 10B, after 3rd spiral.

4. Jim asks Das to buy groceries.

Jim: *kiaa kučh khaanaa bazaar-see laa saktee hāī?*
Das: *kis kisim-kaa khaanaa xariidūū.*
Jim: *īee too kučh baat nahīī.*
kiaa anaar taazee hāī?

Das: *meeraa xiaal hai kee aaj nahīī.*
mangal-koo kisaan-loog anaar nahīī laatee.
leekin duusree kisim-kee phal hāī.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. By now you have a fair amount of material that you can bring into your conversations. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

Work through these situations, saying in Hindustani whatever fits the situation, taking parts as you have done in previous units.

1. You go into a store to buy some eggs. Bargain about the price, tell the shopkeeper that it is too expensive and that you'll pay only so and so much. If you cannot come to an agreement, tell him that you'll go to some other store.

2. You go to visit your sister in the hospital. The attendant asks your name and your sister's name and wants to know why you want to see her. Tell him you are bringing her some food. The attendant tells you to wait: you can see your sister in an hour.

3. Two friends meet and ask each other about their families, about their health, their present occupation and where they're living now.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

<i>a</i>	
<i>afsoos</i>	grief
<i>afsoos-kii</i>	a matter of
<i>baat</i>	grief, too bad!

<i>anaar</i>	pomegranate
<i>aspataal</i>	hospital
<i>aur</i>	else, more, other
	<i>b</i>
<i>baap</i>	father
<i>beechnaa</i>	to buy
<i>bheejnaa</i>	to send

<i>darjan (-ii)</i> <i>diijiiee</i> <i>duusraa</i>	d dozen please give another, second, next	<i>laanaa</i> <i>leenaa</i> <i>loog</i>	l to bring to take people
<i>gaaḏḏ</i> <i>garmii (-ii)</i>	g village, the country heat, the summer	<i>māh'gaa</i> <i>narangiiāā (-ii)</i>	m expensive n oranges
<i>haftaa</i> <i>hameeṣaa</i>	h week always	<i>paas</i> <i>phal</i> <i>puučhnaa</i>	p at fruit to ask
<i>-kee kariib</i> <i>-kee paas</i> <i>kiḏḏ</i> <i>kiḏḏ-kee</i> <i>kis-</i> <i>kisaan</i> <i>kučh</i>	k near . . . at . . . why? because see <i>Word Study</i> farmer some, any; something, anything	<i>rooz</i> <i>rooz-rooz</i> <i>ṣaaed</i> <i>taazaa</i> <i>tarbuuz</i>	r day daily ṣ perhaps t fresh (of food) watermelon
<i>kariib</i> <i>ḳisim</i>	ḳ near kind, sort	<i>xaraab</i> <i>xariidnaa</i>	x bad to buy

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HINDUSTANI?

To the Group Leader: This unit is intended to furnish the group with a thorough review of all the work done to date: understanding of vocabulary, use of vocabulary, and grammar. Pronunciation should be the object of attention whenever the students are talking. Either the Guide or, if there is no Guide, the Leader and other students should correct faulty pronunciation.

Section A is a true-and-false quiz which is to be read to the group by the Guide or the phonograph records. Each student is to write the numbers from 1 to 40 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Hindustani the students are to mark T opposite the number of that statement if they consider it a true statement, and F if they consider it false. If the students understand the Hindustani they will have no difficulty in deciding whether or not the statements are true or false.

Use the first item in the quiz as a practice item. When you are ready to start, announce "Statement 1," and give the signal to the Guide to begin, or put on the phonograph record. The Guide or record will then read the Hindustani statement: "*doo aur chaar chaai hāi*" and will repeat the statement once more. Explain to the group that, since the meaning of this statement is: "Two and four are six" they should write a T after the figure 1 on their papers. Then announce "Statement 2" and continue with the Guide or phonograph record. Each statement in Hindustani is to be presented twice. When working with a Guide, continue to call the number of each statement throughout the quiz so that the students will have no trouble keeping the proper place. Take the quiz with the rest of the group.

In the back of the Guide's manual you will find a list giving the correct answers (T or F) for the Hindustani items, together with the English translations. After the quiz is over, read to the group the correct answers, T or F for each item. The students are to check their papers. Find the average number of correct answers per student for your group and include your own answers. Any student who gets less than the average number of answers or less than 80% (whichever is higher) correct, needs more thorough study and review of the preceding units.

Use the rest of the period to repeat the Hindustani expressions for which students had the wrong answer and give the English equivalents of these statements if they wish to have them. Be sure that the students understand the meaning of all the items which they got wrong; those are the items on which their vocabulary is weak and needs further study.

This unit provides several tests which will help you to make sure that you have thoroughly covered the work of the first five *Learning Units* of the course. They will show you what you may need to restudy or review.

Section A is a true-false quiz. After you have marked the numbers 1 to 40 on a sheet of paper, your Leader will have the Guide read, or will play the phonograph records containing a number of statements in Hindustani. As you hear each sentence, decide whether the statement it makes is true or false. Decide whether the statement is **USUALLY** true or **USUALLY** false. Do not go into particular cases. If you think the statement is true, mark *T* opposite the number corresponding to the number of the sentences that has just been spoken. If you think it is false, mark *F* opposite the number. The first item will be a practice item and will show you just how you are to proceed with the rest of the sentences.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. **DO NOT WRITE ANYTHING DOWN**, but say the Hindustani equivalents out loud and keep practicing them aloud until you have the Hindustani down so cold that when the English is fired at you point-blank you can fire the Hindustani right back without any hesitation.

After you have done this work, the Leader will go through your answers with you as a group, and will tell you which statements are true and which are false. Score your paper, counting one for each correct answer. The Leader will figure out the average score for your group. If your score falls below the average of the group as a whole, you need more study and review of the previous units.

Use the rest of the period to go over the sentences again with your Guide or records. For each item on which you are wrong, be sure that you understand why you are wrong, and what the true meaning of the item is.

If you come out well on this quiz, that indicates that you have a pretty good understanding of practically all the work you have covered to date.

I

1. Good morning, Sir. How are you?
2. I'm fine, thank you.
3. I don't understand.
4. Please speak slowly.
5. Excuse me, where is the railroad station?
6. Go to the left, and again to the left.

7. The hotel is straight ahead.
8. I'd like to have cigarettes.
9. Would you like some food (= to eat)?
10. How much is that?

II

1. Where are you from?
2. Do you like America?
3. What is his name?
4. He understands Hindustani.
5. Can you come tomorrow?
6. When should I come?
7. Please wait here, Sir.
8. The gentleman is busy.
9. Don't bother!
10. Where is your family?

III

1. I think your name is Ram Lal.
2. My elder brother is in the army.
3. Where do you live now?
4. Can I meet you tomorrow?
5. I don't know; I don't think so.
6. He works on Sunday.
7. Do you know him?
8. What does he do (for a living)?

9. Tomorrow is Tuesday.
10. His sister is a pretty girl.

IV

1. The station is not very far from here.
2. I am a stranger.
3. For a little money, I'll show you the sights.
4. How much time does it take?
5. We might as well walk.
6. We have lots of time.
7. This is a temple or a mosque.
8. The roof is very high.
9. My friend is tired.
10. We'll come downstairs soon.

V

1. I want to buy some milk.
2. I am in the hospital.
3. We have all kinds of food.
4. Is it fresh?
5. It spoils quickly.
6. Perhaps the farmers will come.
7. Why should I ask?
8. My friend will go to the country with me.
9. This is expensive.
10. Do you sell oranges?

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

This Section is a drill on the work you have done in Section B of this unit. Keep your book closed. The Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Hindustani equivalents of the English sentences given in Section B. The work

must be kept moving rapidly, and interest should never lag. If the Guide is present he is to listen and correct your pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your ability to use the vocabulary you have learned.

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

(Individual Study)

Go through these English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English, just as you did in Section B of this unit. Do not write anything down, but have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

6. The eggs are very expensive.
7. Would you like to have this or that?
8. I'd like to have that [one].
9. Do you like to eat meat?
10. The food is bad here.

I

1. There is a hotel over there, to the right of the mosque.
2. The milk is good today.
3. The shop is not over there; it is straight ahead.
4. What day is today?
5. I would like to have ten cigarettes.

II

1. What is your name?
2. He speaks Hindustani.
3. But he speaks it slowly.
4. Please speak Hindustani; I can understand.
5. Where should I go?
6. Come with me, by all means.

7. Is tomorrow all right?
8. Come in. I'm delighted.
9. I am pleased to meet you.
10. I am going to study in America.

III

1. I think he is here.
2. Do you know his name?
3. They are sailors and soldiers.
4. I'd like to see the shopkeeper.
5. The shopkeeper is busy, Sir.
6. Tomorrow he is going to work in the store.
7. My younger brother lives with a friend.
8. My friends like to walk a lot.
9. My brother likes it, too.
10. But he also likes to study.

IV

1. I'd like to show you the town.
2. It will take little time.

3. How much will you give me?
4. How far does the bus go?
5. Don't walk; it's too far, Sir.
6. We have enough money, I think.
7. Please give me the money first, Sir.
8. There is no elevator in the building.
9. The elevator is downstairs.
10. Shall I walk down?

V

1. Shall I sell it, or buy more?
2. They bring fruit and eggs from the country.
3. Their fruit is poor (bad) and very expensive.
4. They charge a lot of money.
5. Shall I send it to the hotel or the hospital?
6. What is your friend's name?
7. Will you pay (= give the money) right away, Sir?
8. Send it right away.
9. I am going to take the oranges.
10. When is he going to come out of the hospital?

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

As in Section C, the Leader will go around the group and ask various members to supply (with books closed) the Hindustani equivalents for the sentences given in Section D. If the Guide is present, he will

listen and correct pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your understanding of the way the language is built and functions.

SECTION F—LISTENING IN (QUESTIONS)

To the Group Leader: Following are sets of questions on short conversations which are to be read by the Guide or the phonograph records. Have the Guide read (or play on the record) each conversation through twice. Then have the students answer the questions listed below for the particular conversation. The answer should of course be given in Hindustani, using complete Hindustani sentences. You will find the conversations as well as the correct answers in the Guide's Manual.

Listen to the Guide or the phonograph record as each one of the conversations is read. It will be repeated twice, so listen carefully the second time for anything you didn't catch the first time through. Then be prepared to answer in Hindustani, on the particular conversation, the questions listed below. If you cannot do this without hesitation you need to review the previous *Listening In's*.

Record 12A, beginning.

1. "Do you want to stay in India?"
 1. Where does the conversation take place?
 2. Where is Mary from?
 3. Does she have to leave?
 4. What would she like to do?
 5. Why?

6. How does Mr. Das feel about it?
7. Does Mary want to come back?
8. Does Mr. Das want to leave?

Record 12A, after 1st spiral.

2. *"Where do you work?"*

1. Where does the conversation take place?
2. Does Jim say what he does for a living?
3. Is Mr. Das engaging in his ordinary profession?
4. Does he work for himself?
5. Where does his father live?
6. Does his father own anything?
7. What does Jim do for a living?

Record 12A, after 2nd spiral.

3. *"When can I meet you for dinner?"*

1. Where does the conversation take place?
2. Does Jim want to see Mr. Das again?
3. Does Mr. Das want to see Jim again?
4. What are Mr. Das' plans?
5. What do they finally decide to do?
6. Where does Mr. Das live?
7. What does Jim want to talk about to Mr. Das?

Record 12A, after 3rd spiral.

4. *"Do you know Dick Miller?"*

1. Who is Dick Miller?
2. Do both Jim and Mr. Das know him?
3. Where is he now?
4. Does he live in the city where the conversation takes place?
5. Where do Jim and Mr. Das go after their conversation?
6. Since when has Dick Miller been at his present location?
7. Why does Mr. Das want to accompany Jim?

Record 12A, after 4th spiral.

5. *"Jim gets lost in his car."*

1. Where does he want to go?
2. Can Mr. Das help him?
3. Where do the two men meet?
4. Why is Jim in a hurry?
5. Does he have to turn his car around?
6. Where is the hospital located?
7. What kind of a hospital is it?
8. What is it like?

Record 12B, beginning.

6. “Charlie’s family and the war.”

1. Who is telling the story?
2. What does Charlie do for a living?
3. How many brothers does he mention?
4. Are any of his relatives in India?
5. What do his sisters do for the war?
6. Where will he be two months hence?
7. What does he say about his father?
8. Where is his mother?

Record 12B, after 1st spiral.

7. “Das is looking for a job.”

1. Is Jim looking for help?
2. Does Jim know Mr. Das?
3. What is Mr. Das’ line?
4. Will Jim be able to help him at any time?
5. Does Jim have a brother?
6. What is wrong with Jim’s car?

Record 12B, after 2nd spiral.

8. “Bargaining.”

1. Where does the conversation take place?
2. What does Mr. Das do for a living?
3. What does Jim want?
4. Why does Mr. Das ask so much money?
5. How many kinds of eggs are there for sale?
6. How much does Mr. Das ask for six eggs?
7. Why should Jim come back the next day?
8. Does he want to come back?
9. Are there other shops in town?

Record 12B, after 3rd spiral.

9. “Jim goes to see Mr. Das at his house.”

1. Does Husein know Mr. Das?
2. Could the conversation take place at two p.m.?
3. Is Mr. Das ill?
4. How long is he going to stay in the hospital?
5. Does Jim want to wait for Mr. Das’ return?
6. When does Husein say Mr. Das will be back?

SECTION G—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations, from one to two minutes each, on as many of the topics which have been developed in Units 1-6 as you can, combining and

varying them as you wish. All members of the group should have a chance to take part.

AN EVENING OUT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Paul tells Das about his plans for the evening.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

AIDS TO LISTENING

Record 13A. beginning.

Paul:
the night
the entertainment
I'm going to town tonight to see a show.

raat,
tamaaśaa.
aaj raat-mēc māi kuḥ tamaaśaa deekhnec-kec liice, śaher-koo
jaaññ-gaa.

Do you want to come with me?

*kiaa aap meerce saath aanaa ŷuah*tee hāi?*

Das:
[yesterday
the evening
was
Thank you very much, but I was in town last
night.

*kal*¹
śaam.
thaa.
bahot meherbaanii. leekin māi, kal śaam-koo śaher-mēc thaa.

¹Not on record.

Paul:
alone
were
Were you alone?

Das:
were
No, my two sisters were with me.
Who'll you go with?

Paul:
My girl friend'll go with me.

ill
was
She was very sick, but today she's well [again].
therefore
And so we want to see a show.

Das:
What show'll you go to?

Paul:
the puppet
interesting
I think the puppet-show's very interesting.

Das:
the music
All girls like music.

akeelaa.
thee.
kiaa aap akelee thee?

thiī
jii nahīī meerii doo bah'nēē meeree saath thiī.
aap kis-kee saath jaaēē-gee.

meerii doost meeree saath jaaee-gii.

biimaar.
thii.
uoo bahot biimaar thii, leekin aaj ačēhii hai.

is liiee,
aur is liiee ham-loog, kučh tamaasaa deekhnāa čaah'tee hāī.

kis tamaašee-mēē jaaēē-gee.

pullii.
mazeedaar.
meeraa xiaal hai kee pullii-kaa tamaašaa bahot mazeedaar hai.

gaanaa bajaanaa,
sab laṛkiiāā gaanaa bajaanaa pasand kartii hāī.

the theater
the movie
Why not go to a theater or a movie?

Record 13B, beginning.

Paul:
to begin
When does the movie begin?

Das:
Ask my younger brother.
doubtless
to tell
He can certainly tell you.

Paul:
Why?
the movie
Does he like movies very much?

Das:
the morning
the afternoon
Yes, he wants to go to the movies in the morning,
afternoon, and evening.

Paul:
I'll ask him then.

naaTak.
sinamaa.
(1) *too naaTak iaa sinamaa deekhēē?*
(2) *too naaTak iaa sinamaa deekhēē.*

šuruu hoonaa,
sinamaa kab šuruu hootaa hai.

meerce šhootee bhaaii-see puuχhiiee.

beešak.
bataanaa.
uoo beešak aap-koo balaa saktaa hai.

kiōō,
baaeskoop,
kiaa uoo baaeskoop, bahot pasand kartaa hai?

subaa.
doo paher.
jii hāā uoo subaa, doo paher, aur šaam-koo baaeskoop, jaanaa
šaahtaa hai.

too māi us-see puuχhūū-gaa.

Paul:
after the movie
What restaurant should we eat in after the movie?

Das:
All the restaurants in this city are good.

before going
to get a haircut
it is necessary
But before you go to town you should get a hair-
cut.

Paul:
Where should I go for a haircut?

Das:
The barbershop's to your right.
Afterwards I'll go to town with you.

the thing
I have to buy a few things.

Paul:
Fine, let's go!

*sinamee-kee baad,
sinamee-kee baad, ham-loog, kis khaanee-kii dukaan-mēē
khaaēē.*

- (1) *is šaher-mēē sab khaanee-kii dukaanēē ačhii hāi,*
(2) *is šaher-mēē sab khaanee-kii dukaanēē ačhii hāi.*

(1) *jaanee-kee pah'lee.*
(2) *jaanee-kee pah'lee,
baal kaTaanaa.
šaahiiee.*
*leekin šaher-koo jaanee-kee pah'lee, aap-koo baal kaTaanaa
šaahiiee.*

- 1) *baal kaTaanee-kee liiee māi kahāū jaaūū;*
2) *baal kaTaanee-kee liiee māi kahāū jaaūū.*

baal kaTaanee-kii dukaan, aap-kee dah'nii taraf hai.
us-kee baad, māi aap-kee saath šaher-koo jaaūū-gaa.

īiiz.
mujh-koo kuch īiizēē xariidnaa šaahiiee.

ačhhaa. aaoo šalēē.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Vowel sequences. You have heard enough instances of simple (short) and double (long) vowels. They are not particularly difficult to pronounce if you listen closely to the Guide or phonograph, and look up the descriptions in the *Hints on Pronunciation* in Unit 1. Always remember that double vowels in the middle of a word take about twice as long to say as simple vowels, which are extremely short.

Frequently, we find combinations of different vowels. If *i-* and *u-* precede another vowel, they are run together with it to form one syllable. *i-* before another vowel, then, sounds much like the English "y" in "yield" or "yawn". *u-* before another vowel is most often like the "w" in "wood" or "wax;" but often the lips aren't rounded at all. (With many Hindustani speakers both the *i-* and the *u-* before vowels are accompanied by much more friction, so that the *i-* sounds almost like the "s" in "leisure" and the *u-* like the "v" in "very". Listen to your Guide and imitate his particular pronunciation.)

Record 14A, beginning.

Practice 1

īee 'this, he, she, it,
these, they'
iahāā 'here'

uoo 'that, he, she, it, those,
they'
uahāā 'there'

kīaa 'what?'
kiōō 'why?'
ziāudaa 'more'

ituaar 'Sunday'

An *ii-*, on the other hand, is kept apart from a following vowel; it makes up a syllable by itself.

Record 14A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 2

ṣukriīaa 'thank you'
jaaiīee 'please go'

Thairiīee 'please wait'
narangiīāā 'oranges'

ai is always ONE syllable. It starts out with a vowel like the "a" in English "apple" and blends into something like the "e" in "egg". (Some speakers pronounce *ai* like a prolonged "a" in "apple".)

Record 14A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 3

hai 'is'
**rupaiīaa* 'rupee' (some speakers
say *rupīaa* in two syllables
instead of three)

māī 'I'
paiīaa 'money'

ai must be kept apart carefully from the combinations *aiīi*, *aaē* which start with a LONG *aa*-vowel. Contrast the following:

*On the record the speaker says *rupīaa*, not *rupaiīaa*.

Record 14A, after 3rd spiral.

Practice 4

<i>hai</i> 'is'	<i>bhaaii</i> 'brother'	<i>baaeskoop</i> 'movie'
<i>hāi</i> 'are'	<i>baaīi taraf</i> 'to the left'	<i>šaaed</i> 'perhaps'

au is always ONE syllable. It starts out with something like the "u" in "ugly" and blends into the "au" of "caught". (Some Hindustani speakers pronounce *au* like a prolonged "au" in "caught".)

Record 14A, after 4th spiral.

Practice 5

<i>nau</i> 'nine'	<i>kaun</i> 'who, which?'
	<i>fauran</i> 'immediately'

This *au* must be kept distinct from *aaoo* and *aaui* which start in with a LONG *aa*. Compare the following:

Record 14A, after 5th spiral.

Practice 6

<i>sau</i> 'hundred'	<i>aaoo</i> 'come on'	
	<i>gaaōō</i> 'the village'	<i>aaūū</i> 'I may come'

2. The *r*-sound. Remember that *r* is always a full, rolled consonant sound. You must be especially careful to pronounce it at the end of a syllable or word and to keep preceding short vowels short and long vowels long. Compare the following:

Record 14A, after 6th spiral.

Practice 7

<i>ghar</i> 'house'	<i>šaar</i> 'four'
<i>andar</i> 'inside'	<i>anaar</i> 'pomegranate'
<i>meherbaanii</i> 'thank you'	<i>deer</i> 'the while'
<i>mandir</i> 'temple'	<i>duur</i> 'far'
	<i>aur</i> 'and'

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. PLURAL OF FEMININE NOUNS IN -*ĒĒ* AND -*ĀĀ*.

- sab khaanee-kii dukaanēē ačhiī hāi* "all the restaurants are good."
kučh čiižēē "some things"
- meerii doo bah'nēē* "my two sisters"

- kučh narangiīāā nahīi* "no oranges"
sab larkīiāā gaanaa bajaana pasand kartii hāi "All girls like music."

- The PLURAL OF FEMININE nouns is expressed by adding the ending -*ēē*

<i>dukaan</i> 'shop'	:	<i>dukaanēē</i> 'shops'
<i>čiiž</i> 'thing'	:	<i>čiižēē</i> 'things'

<i>fauj</i> 'army'	:	<i>faujēē</i> 'armies'
<i>ĉhat</i> 'roof'	:	<i>ĉhatēē</i> 'roofs'
<i>masjid</i> 'mosque'	:	<i>masjidēē</i> 'mosques'
<i>mooTar</i> 'automobile'	:	<i>mooTarēē</i> 'automobiles'

2. When the feminine noun ends in a vowel plus a short consonant plus a short vowel plus a short consonant (which we may symbolize: . . . VCVC) the second short vowel may be dropped, and one syllable lost, before *-ēē* (. . . VCCēē):

<i>saRak</i> 'street'	:	<i>saRkēē</i> 'street'
<i>imaarat</i> 'building'	:	<i>imaartēē</i> 'buildings'

In the case of *bahen* 'sister' and other words having *-he-* in them, the same loss of a syllable takes place, only that the *e* remains as the "whispered" * which "colors" the *h*:

<i>bahen</i> "sister"	:	<i>bah'nēē</i> "sisters"
-----------------------	---	--------------------------

3. FEMININE nouns ending in *-ii* add *-āā* more often than *-ēē* for their plural form:

<i>larkii</i> 'girl'	:	<i>larkiiāā</i> 'girls'
<i>nadii</i> 'river'	:	<i>nadiiāā</i> 'rivers'
<i>narangii</i> 'orange'	:	<i>narangiiāā</i> 'oranges'

(Contrast: *baraa* (masculine) *sipaahii* 'big soldier' :
baRee sipaahii 'big soldiers')

barii (feminine) *nadii* 'big river' :
barii nadiiāā 'big rivers')

B. "WAS, WERE."

māi šaher-mee thaa 'I was in town'
uoo bahot biimaar thii 'She was very ill.'
kiaa aap akelee thee? 'Were you alone?'
meerii doo bah'nēē meeree saath thii 'my two sisters were with me'

thaa and *thii* mean 'was' (SINGULAR)
thee and *thii* mean 'were' (PLURAL)

thaa 'was' and *thee* 'were' are used with reference to masculine nouns or with pronouns unless they refer to female persons.

thii 'was' and *thii* 'were' are used with reference to feminine nouns, or, if there is no noun mentioned explicitly, referring to female persons.

Thus, a woman would say: *māi šaher-mēē thii* "I was in the city." Furthermore:

uoo bahot biimaar thaa "he was very ill."
uoo bahot biimaar thee "they were very ill"
uoo bahot biimaar thii "they (women) were very ill"
kiaa aap akeelii thii? "were you (woman or women spoken to) alone?"
meeree doo bhaaii meeree saath thee "My two brothers were with me."

C. THE OBLIQUES, *MUJH*- '... ME',
AND *HAM*- '... US'.

mujh-koo maalum nahī 'TO ME it is not apparent, i.e.: I don't know'
mujh-koo uakt nahī 'TO ME time is not, i.e. I have no time'
mujh-koo cek darjan diijiiee 'please give (TO) ME a dozen'
ham-koo bahot uakt nahī 'TO US much time is not, i.e. we haven't much time'

The oblique case form of *māī* 'I' is *mujh*- '... me' as in *mujh-koo* 'to me', *mujh-see* 'from, with me', *mujh-par* 'on me'.

ham 'we, us' does not change its form before particles: *ham-koo* 'to us', *ham-par* 'upon us'.

These two forms are NEVER found before *-kaa* (*-kee*, *-kii*); see the *Word Study*, Comment E, in Unit 5. Compare:

<i>bhaaii-koo</i> 'to the brother'	<i>bhaaii-kii mootar</i> 'the brother's car'
<i>aap-koo</i> 'to you'	<i>aap-kii mootar</i> 'your car'
<i>us-koo</i> 'to that, him, her, it'	<i>us-kii mootar</i> 'his, her, its car'
<i>mujh-koo</i> 'to me'	<i>meerii mootar</i> 'my car'
<i>ham-koo</i> 'to us'	<i>hamarii mootar</i> 'our car'

D. "THIS, THAT, HIS, HER, ITS, THEIR."

This is only a rearrangement of things you already know. You must make sure, however, not only to be able to make out what the examples mean, but to be COMPLETELY sure of their use.

<i>uoo ghar</i> 'that house'	<i>iee ghar</i> 'this house'
<i>us-kaa ghar</i> 'his, her house'	<i>is-kaa ghar</i> 'his, her house'
<i>un-kaa ghar</i> 'their house'	<i>in-kaa ghar</i> 'their house'
<i>uoo ghar</i> 'those houses'	<i>iee ghar</i> 'these houses'
<i>us-kee ghar</i> 'his, her houses'	<i>is-kee ghar</i> 'his, her houses'
<i>un-kee ghar</i> 'their houses'	<i>in-kee ghar</i> 'their houses'
<i>uoo juutaa</i> 'that shoe'	<i>iee juutaa</i> 'this shoe'
<i>us-kaa juutaa</i> 'his, her shoe'	<i>is-kaa juutaa</i> 'his, her shoe'
<i>un-kaa juutaa</i> 'their shoe'	<i>in-kaa juutaa</i> 'their shoe'
<i>uoo juutee</i> 'those (pairs of) shoes'	<i>iee juutee</i> 'these (pairs of) shoes'
<i>us-kee juutee</i> 'his, her shoes'	<i>is-kee juutee</i> 'his, her shoes'
<i>un-kee juutee</i> 'their shoes'	<i>in-kee juutee</i> 'their shoes'
<i>uoo bahen</i> 'that sister'	<i>iee bahen</i> 'this sister'
<i>us-kii bahen</i> 'his, her sister'	<i>is-kii bahen</i> 'his, her sister'
<i>un-kii bahen</i> 'their sister'	<i>in-kii bahen</i> 'their sister'
<i>uoo bahenē</i> 'those sisters'	<i>iee bahenē</i> 'these sisters'
<i>us-kii bahenē</i> 'his, her sisters'	<i>is-kii bahenē</i> 'his, her sisters'
<i>un-kii bahenē</i> 'their sisters'	<i>in-kii bahenē</i> 'their sisters'

E. POLITE COMMAND FORM.

1. *phir booliiee* 'please speak again'
phir aaiiee 'please come again'
aspataal-koo bhecjiiee 'please send (them) to the hospital'
2. *maaf kiijiiee* 'please "make [it] excused," please excuse me'
eck darjan diijiiee 'please give me one dozen'

1. When you tell a person POLITELY what he or she SHOULD do, you use the stem of the verb with the ending *-iiee*. Remember that this ending is always pronounced as two syllables.

2. Remember the two irregular forms in *-iiee*:

kiijiiee 'please do' (which goes with *karnaa* 'to do',
kar saktaa hūū 'I can do', *kartaa hūū* 'I do').
diijiiee 'please give'

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hindustani, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the Basic Sentences, covering up the English and reading aloud the Hindustani. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would you Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expressions you think most suitable:

1. Your friend asks you whether you want to see a show:
 - a. *kiaa aap kuñ tamaaśaa deekhnāa ṛaah'tee hāī?*
 - b. *kiaa aap kuñ tamaaśaa dikhaanaa ṛaah'tee hāī?*
 - c. *tamāśaa deekhnee-kee liiee kitnāa paisaa lagtaa hai.*

2. You say all your sisters are ill:
 - a. *meerii sab bah'nēē beeśak ghar-mēē hāī.*
 - b. *sab larkiiāā naarak pasand kartii hāī.*
 - c. *meerii sab bah'nēē bimaar hāī.*
3. You say that you therefore should stay at home:
 - a. *māī us-kee liēē kīaa kar saktaa hūū.*
 - b. *too māī niiēē rahūū-gaa.*
 - c. *is liēē mujh-koo ghar-mēē rah'naa īaahiēē.*
4. But you can go to town tomorrow afternoon:
 - a. *leekin kal subaa-mēē māī gaaōō-koo jaaūū-gaa.*
 - b. *leekin kal doo paher-mēē māī śaher-koo jaa saktaa hūū.*
 - c. *kal śaam-koo māī śaher-mēē thaa.*
5. He asks whether you will go to the movies with him:
 - a. *kīaa aap meereē saath sinamee-koo jaaēē-gee?*
 - b. *too sinamaa deekhēē?*
 - c. *baeskoop meereē ghar-see bahot duur nahīī.*
6. You refuse, because you want to return early:
 - a. *jīī nahīī. māī uahāū rah' nahīī saktaa.*
 - b. *jīī nahīī. māī jaldīī uaaapas aanaa īaah'taa hūū.*
 - c. *jīī nahīī. māī jaldīī uaaapas aaūū-gaa.*

Here are some more sentences with blanks for you to fill in:

7. My sister was ill
meerii bahen biimaar -----.

8. He was alone
uoo akeelaa -----.
9. Were you happy?
kīaa aap xuś -----?
10. His sisters were in town
us-kīī bah'nēē śaher-mēē -----.
11. In this city are many famous buildings
is śaher-mēē bahot maśhuur ----- hāī.
12. Five girls live here
pāāč ----- iahāū rah'tīī hāī.

Read the following questions aloud and be ready to speak out the answer to each one. Make your answers brief and to the point.

13. *aap-kaa naam kīaa hai.*
14. *kīaa aap-kee baal-bačēē iahāū rah'tee hāī?*
15. *aap-kee doost-kaa peeśaa kīaa hai.*
16. *kīaa aap sinamaa pasand kartee hāī?*
17. *aaj kaun dīn hai.*
18. *aap kab śaher-koo jaatee hāī.*
19. *istēēśan-koo jaanee-kee liēē, kitnaa uakt lagtaa hai.*
20. *kīaa aap sigret piinaa īaah'tee hāī?*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for each of the exercises in the preceding sections, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hindustani for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat each conversation if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

LISTENING IN

Record 14A, after 7th spiral.

1. Jim comes to Mr. Das' home.

Jim: *māi kuḥ ʕiizēṛ xariidnee-kee liiee, šaher-koo jaataa hūū.*

kiaa māi aap-kee liiee kuḥ kar saktaa hūū?

Das: *mujh-koo baal kaṭaanaa ʕaahiiee.*
kiaa māi aap-kee saath aa saktaa hūū?

Jim: *xuṣii-see.*
meerii mootar-see šaher-koo jaanee-kee liiee, sirf eek ghanṭaa lagtaa hai.
aur ham aasaanii-see raat-kee pahʕlee, uaapas aa saktee hāi.

Das: *aḷḷhaa.*
šaaed ham-loog baal kaṭaanee-kee baad, kuḥ tamaašaa deekh saktee hāi.

Jim: *mceraa xiaal nahīi.*
mujh-koo bahot uqṭ nahīi.
mujh-koo šaam-kee pahʕlee uaapas aanaa ʕaahiiee
meerii ʕhootii laṛkii kuḥ biimaar thii.

Das: *afsoos-kii baat.*
kiaa uo abhii aḷḷhii hootii hai?

Jim: *jii hāi.*
leekin us-koo bahot duudh piinaa, aur taazee phal khaanaa ʕaahiiee.

Record 14B, beginning.

Listening In (Cont.)

is liiee, māi narangiiāā xariidnee-koo, šaher jaataa hūū.

Das: *too fauran šalēē.*

Record 14B, after 1st spiral.

2. Jim addresses a stranger on the street.

Jim: *maaf kiijiiee.*
kiaa aap is šaher-koo jaantee hāi?

Aziz: *jii hāā.*
māi iahēē rah'taa hūū.
kiaa aap ajnabii hāi?

Jim: *māi aur meeree doost amriikan sipaahii hāi.*
ham-loog kuch tamaašaa deekhmaa šaah'tee hāi.
kiaa aap ham-koo tamaašaa dikhaa saktee hāi?

Aziz: *saaed aap guanaa bajaanaa pasand karēē.*
too sinamaa deekheē.
uoo bahot mazedar hai.

Jim: *ham sinamaa amriikaa-mēē deekh saktee hāi.*
kiaa kučh hindustaanii tamaašaa nahii?

Aziz: *jii hāā; pullii-kaa tamaašaa, iaa naatak.*

Jim: *pullii-kaa tamaašaa kab šuruu hootaa hai.*

Aziz: *māi nahii jaantaa.*
un saahab-see puučiiee.
uoo pullii-kee tamaašee-kaa kaam kartee hāi,
aur aap-koo bataa saktee hāi.

Record 14B, after 2nd spiral.

3. Jim is paying Mr. Aziz a visit.

Jim: *kiaa aap kal bazaar-mēē thee?*

Aziz: *jii nahii. māi kal kučh biimaar thaa.*
aur is liiee ghar-mēē thaa.
leekin meerii laRkii bazaar-mēē thii.
aap kiōō puučiitee hāi.

Jim: *māi deekhtaa hūū kee aap-kee paas, taazii*
narangiiāā hāi.
aur narangiiāā sirf bazaar-mēē beečtee hāi.
kiaa aap mujh-koo biiuii-kee liiee,
doo tiin narangiiāā becē saktee hāi?
us-koo narangiiāā khaanaa šaahiiee.

Aziz: *māi aap-koo narangiiāā beečnaa nahii šaah'taa.*
leekin māi xušii-see aap-koo kučh dee saktaa hūū
kiaa aap-kii biiuii bhii biimaar hai?

Jim: *jii hāā.*
uoo kučh biimaar hai.

Aziz: *kiaa uoo abhii ghar-mēē akeelii hai?*

Jim: *abhii meerii bahen us-kee saath hai.*
leekin uoo kal subaa-koo jaaec-gii.

Aziz: *too māi, ghar-kaa kaam karnee-kee liiee,*
kal subaa, māi laRkii-koo bheejūū-gaa.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Cover the Hindustani in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. Paul invites Mr. Das to come with him to the city to buy some things. Mr. Das says no, he has to stay home. His wife has been ill in the hospital. Now she is home, but she cannot do the work of the house yet, therefore he cannot go with Paul. Paul says that that is too bad, and asks whether there is anything he can

do for Mr. Das. Mr. Das asks him to buy a few things for them in the city. Paul says he'll bring the things that evening.

2. A man goes into a store to buy some fresh pomegranates. The shopkeeper tells him they had some pomegranates that morning, but now he doesn't have any. It is too late. But tomorrow morning the farmers will bring him some fresh fruit. The man asks him to send the pomegranates tomorrow morning before 12, gives him directions where to send them. They agree on a price.

3. A friend introduces Paul to his sister. They talk for a while, and it turns out that Paul knows her friend, who is studying in college in America. Finally, he asks her for a date, dinner and a movie. They agree on a day and on the kind of entertainment they want to see.

4. Paul and his friend go to town to see some of the sights. They ask the way to a famous temple. When they get there they ask somebody whether they can go inside, and he answers that they can, but they should take their shoes off before going in. After they've seen the temple they go somewhere for a meal.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

	<i>a</i>	alone	<i>kal</i> <i>kaTaanaa</i> <i>-kee baad</i> <i>-kee pah'lee</i>	<i>k</i>	yesterday, tomorrow to have cut after . . . before . . .
<i>akeelaa</i>	<i>b</i>	after movie the hair to play (an instrument) to tell doubtless ill, sick	<i>mazeedaar</i> <i>naaTak</i> <i>paher</i> <i>pah'lee</i> <i>putlii (-ii)</i>	<i>m</i>	tasty, interesting
<i>baad</i> <i>baaeskoop</i> <i>baal</i> (plural) <i>bajaanaa</i> <i>balaanaa</i> <i>beešak</i> <i>biimaar</i>	<i>č</i>	it is necessary thing	<i>raat (-ii)</i>	<i>n</i>	theater
<i>čaahiiee</i> <i>čiič (-ii)</i>	<i>d</i>	afternoon	<i>sinamaa</i> <i>subaa (-ii)</i>	<i>p</i>	see <i>doo paher</i> before puppet
<i>doo paher</i>	<i>g</i>	to sing singing and playing, music	<i>šaam (-ii)</i> <i>šuruu hoonaa</i>	<i>r</i>	the night, the evening
<i>gaanaa</i> <i>gaanaa bajaanaa</i>	<i>i</i>	therefore	<i>tamaašaa</i> <i>thaa</i> <i>thee</i> <i>thii</i> <i>thiī</i>	<i>s</i>	movie morning
<i>is liiee</i>				<i>š</i>	evening to begin
				<i>t</i>	entertainment was were was were

FAMILY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 15A, beginning.

Aziz and Paul exchange news about their families. Aziz invites Paul for dinner.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

Aziz:
the parents
How are your parents?

Paul:
the mother
now
to seem
My mother hasn't been very well, but she seems
better.

I hope
the parents
I hope that your parents are all right, (too).

Aziz:
They're well.

AIDS TO LISTENING

uaaldain,
aap-kee uaaldain kaisee hāī.

māā.
ab.
dikhnaa,
meerii māā kuḥ biimaar thīī. leekin ab aḥḥii dikhṭii hāī.

mujh-koo ummiid hai,
māā-baap,
mujh-koo ummiid hai kee aap-kee māā-baap bhii aḥḥee hāī.

uoo aḥḥee hāī.

new
We're living in a new house now.

I'll be glad to show it to you.

the child
Perhaps you and your children'll come to dinner
tomorrow night.

Paul:
the day
married
I haven't any children, because I've only been
married a short time.

But my wife and I'd be glad to come.

any
Have you got any children?

Aziz:
the daughter
I have two daughters.

Paul:
the age
How old are they?

Aziz:
fifteen
the year
One is (lit.: of) seven and the other's fifteen.

¹The record has *baḷṭee-kee* by mistake.

naiaa.
ham abhii naee ghar-mēṭ rah'ṭee hāī.
māī xuṣii-xuṣii aap-koo dikhaaūū-gaa.
baḷṭaa,
ṣaaed aap, kal raat-koo, baḷṭōō-kee¹ saath, khaanee-kee liiee
aaṭē.

din,
ṣaadii-ṣudaa,
meeree baḷṭee nahīī kiṭōō-kee māī, sirf thoorec din-see ṣaadii-
ṣudaa hūū.

leekin meerii biiuii, aur māī, xuṣii-see aaūū-gaa.

kooii,
kiaa aap-kee kooii baḷṭee hāī?

beeṭii,
meerii doo beeṭiiāā hāī.

umar,
un-kii umar kiaa hai.

pandraa,
baras,
eeḱ saat baras-kii hai, aur duusrii pandraa baras-kii.

Record 15B, beginning.

Paul:

Does anyone else live with you?

Aziz:

the husband

Yes, my sister and her husband.

poor

the man

the factory

He's a very poor man and works in a factory.

Their daughter lives at our house, too.

to get married

She'll probably get married soon.

Paul has dinner at Aziz's house.

Aziz:

Please come in, sir?

Isn't your wife coming?

Paul:

the servant

She can't come, because she hasn't any servants
and (therefore) has too much work to do.

Aziz:

the sorrow

Oh, that's too bad (lit. I'm sorry)!

¹Both forms are used.

kiaa kooii aur aap-kee saath rah'taa hai?

(1) *xaauind*

(2) *xāūind¹*

jii hāū. meerii bahen, aur us-kaa xāūind.

gariib,

aadmii.

kaarxuanaa,

uoo bahot gariib aadmii hāi, aur kaarxaance-mēē kaam kartee hāi.

un-kii larkii bhii hamaaree ghar-mēē rah'tii hai.

šaadii karnaa,

šaaed, uoo jaldii šaadii karree.

ghar-kee andar aatiiee janaab,

kiaa aap-kii biiiii nahīi aatii?

naukar.

*uoo nahīi aa saktii. kiōō-kee us-kee paas kooii naukar nahīi,
aur is liiee us-koo bahot kaam hai.*

afsoos,

mujh-koo afsoos hai.

the woman
strenuous
Women's work is very hard.

to cook
the clothes
and so forth
They take care of the house all day, cook the
meals, wash the clothes, and all that.

but (lit. again)
But let's go [now].

ready
Dinner's ready.

Paul:
hungry
Good, I'm very hungry.

Aziz:
Will you have some milk?

Paul:
thirsty
[No] thanks, (but) I'm not thirsty.

Record 16A, beginning.

Aziz:
the salt
please take
Have some more salt!

106 [8-A]

aurat.
saxt.
aurtōō-kaa kaam bahot saxt hai.

pakaanaa,
kapree,
uagairaa.
sab din, uoō ghar-kaa kaam kartii hāī, khaanaa pakaatii hāī,
kapree dhootii hāī, uagairaa uagairaa.

phir,
phir ālēcē.

taiiaar.
khaanaa taiiaar hai.

bhuukaa.
aččhaa māī bahot bhuukaa hūū.

kiaa aap kučh duudh piiēcē-gee?

piaasaa.
meherbaanii. leekin māī piaasaa nahīī.

namak.
liījīīee.
kučh aur namak liījīīee.

without salt
Without salt food doesn't taste very good.

Paul:
the father
Isn't your father going to eat?

Aziz:
the room
asleep
No, he's sleeping in [his] room.
young
to rest
He isn't a young man any more and he needs to
rest.

Go through the following in the same way as the
Basic Sentences, repeating each item after your Guide
or the phonograph record.

Record 16A, after 1st spiral.

Days of the week and additional numbers.

Sunday	<i>ituaar,</i>
Monday	<i>soomuaar,</i>
Tuesday	<i>mangal.</i>
Wednesday	<i>budh.</i>
Thursday	<i>jumraat.</i>
Friday	<i>jumaa.</i>
Saturday	<i>saniicar.</i>

namak-kee bagair,
namak-kee bagair, khaanaa mazeedaar nahii.

uaalid,
kiaa aap-kee uaalid, khaanaa nahii khaatce?

kamraa.
soo rahaa.
mcerce uaalid, kamrec-mēē soo rahee hāi.
jauaan.
aaraam karnaa,
uoo ab jauaan aadmii nahii. aur un-koo aaraam karnaa
ēaahīee.

thirteen	<i>teeraa,</i>
fourteen	<i>ēaudaa,</i>
fifteen	<i>pandraa.</i>
sixteen	<i>soolaa.</i>
seventeen	<i>saltraa.</i>
eighteen	<i>aThaaraa.</i>
nineteen	<i>unaiis.</i>
twenty	<i>biis.</i>

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second
time, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Keep your vowels even. The vowels in such Eng-
lish words as "gay" or "slow" are quite similar to the

Hindustani *ee* and *oo* (as in *thee* 'were', or *doo* 'two'), except for the English "y" and "w" glide towards the end. The Hindustani sounds are completely EVEN; they wind up with the same quality with which they start out, no matter how long they are held.

Record 16A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 1

<i>iee</i> 'this, he, she, it; these, they'	<i>uoo</i> 'that, he, she, it; those, they'
<i>thee</i> 'were'	<i>doo</i> 'two'
<i>meeri</i> 'iny'	<i>thookaa</i> 'little'
<i>eek</i> 'one'	<i>goošt</i> 'meat'
<i>(ghar-)mēē</i> 'in (the house)'	<i>kiōō</i> 'why'

The Hindustani sound written *uu* (as in *duudh* 'milk') is closer to the English "oo" in "pool" than to the one in "tool", that is, you must pronounce it with your lips well ROUNDED. Also, try to keep your tongue farther back in the mouth than you would do for the English "oo" sounds.

Record 16A, after 3rd spiral.

Practice 2

<i>duudh</i> 'milk'	<i>xuubsuurat</i> 'beautiful'
<i>mašhuur</i> 'famous'	<i>hūū</i> 'am'

The "clear l". Some American speakers have two different "l" sounds in the words "hilly" ("thick l")

and "million" ("clear l"). In "hilly" the tongue is hollowed out like the bowl of a spoon, and the tip of the tongue is raised, but for the clear "l" the tongue is arched like the back of a spoon, and the tip is down behind the lower teeth. Try to say the sounds "illi" both with a clear and a thick "l". In Hindustani all the "l"s are clear ones.

Record 16A, after 4th spiral.

Practice 3

<i>kal</i> 'yesterday, tomorrow'	<i>milnaa</i> 'to meet'
<i>xiaal</i> 'thought'	<i>lift</i> 'elevator'

2. *k*, *g*, *kh*, *gh*, *x*, *k̄*, *ḡ*. There is nothing particularly difficult about the *k*, *g*, *kh*, *gh*. These sounds are much like English "k"s and ("hard") "g"s, except that you must be careful, as usual, to avoid the breath where no *h* is written, and to pronounce the sound with strong breath where it is written. Go back to the examples at the end of Practices 1 and 3 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* in Unit 4.

For the *x*, you may go back to Practice 3 in Unit 2. Remember that this sound is pronounced very far back in the mouth, and has strong and continued noise to it. This distinguishes it from *h*.

In the words for 'near', 'sort', 'time' some speakers use a normal *k*: *karīb*, *kisim*, *uakt*. Many speakers, however, have a different sound, *k̄*, which is pronounced much further back in the mouth. If you can pronounce

the *x* properly, you should have no trouble in saying a *k*. All you have to do is to raise the back of your tongue still further so as to produce not only friction noise (as in *x*), but almost complete closure. This will give you much less noise, and the effect of a very back *k*. If you do not succeed in distinguishing '*k*' from '*x*', you had better ignore the dot underneath and say an ordinary '*k*'.

Record 16A, after 5th spiral.

Practice 4

ḡariib 'near'

ḡisim 'sort'

uakt 'time'

You are of course familiar with the difference in sound between the "ss" in "fussy" and the "zz" in "buzzing". Both sounds are in many respects the same, but the "ss" has more hissing noise and no voice to it, while the "zz" is pronounced with humming voice. The same difference exists between, for instance, the "f" in "fan" (voiceless) and the "v" in "van" (hummed or voiced), or between the "t" in 'solution' (voiceless) and the "s" in 'confusion' (voiced).

With this in mind, you will agree that the *x* in *paaxaanaa* 'toilet' or *xaraab* 'bad' is voiceless (much like English "ss" or "sh" or "f", only much farther back in the mouth than any of them). The corresponding "voiced" sound is here written *g*. It is pronounced in the words for 'poor', 'without', and 'etcetera'. Some people produce this sound while gargling. Also, it is

not very far removed from the kind of "back r" which some foreigners (especially Frenchmen or Germans) use for "r". If you cannot get this sound properly, you may ignore the dot underneath and substitute an ordinary '*g*', as is done by some speakers of Hindustani.

Record 16A, after 6th spiral.

Practice 5

ḡariib 'poor'

meerce bagair 'without me'

uagairaa 'etcetera'

[Record 16A, after 7th spiral]¹

Distinguish the following words (ignoring the dots in case your Guide says *k* and *g* for *k* and *g*):

Record 16B, beginning.

Practice 6

kuḥ 'some, any'

xuṣ 'happy'

kiaa 'what'

xiaal 'thought'

dikhaanaa 'to show'

paaxaanaa 'toilet'

deek(h)taa hūū 'I see'

saxl 'strenuous'

ḡis ḡisim-kee phal 'what kind of fruits'

uakt 'time'

ḡariib 'near'

karee 'he may do'

xaraab 'bad'

ḡarmi 'heat'

ḡariib 'poor'

ḡhar 'house'

¹When using the records, disregard Record 16A after the 7th spiral, and start with Record 16B.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. OBLIQUE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

<i>baḷḷōḍ-kee saath</i>	'with the children'
<i>aurtōḍ-kaa kaam</i>	'women's work'

ALL PLURAL NOUNS have an ending before particles: -*ōḍ*- (OBLIQUE PLURAL). Those masculine nouns which change their ending from -*aa* to -*ee* (plural and oblique singular) replace -*aa* by -*ōḍ*-, while all the other nouns (both masculine and feminine) simply add -*ōḍ*- when a particle follows, thus:

<i>meeraa bhaaii</i> 'my brother'	<i>meeraa kamraa</i> 'my room'
<i>meeree bhaaii-see</i> 'from my brother'	<i>meeree kamree-mēē</i> 'in my room'
<i>meeree bhaaii</i> 'my brothers'	<i>meeree kamree</i> 'my rooms'
<i>meeree bhaaiiōḍ-see</i> 'from my brothers'	<i>meeree kamrōḍ-mēē</i> 'in my rooms'
<i>duusrīi baat</i> 'another matter'	<i>taazīi narangīi</i> 'a fresh orange'
<i>duusrīi baat-koo</i> 'to another matter'	<i>taazīi narangīi-mēē</i> 'in a fresh orange'
<i>duusrīi baatēē</i> 'other matters'	<i>taazīi narangīiāā</i> 'fresh oranges'
<i>duusrīi baatōḍ-see</i> 'from other matters'	<i>taazīi narangīiōḍ-par</i> 'on fresh oranges'

Note that:

110 [8-B]

- ADJECTIVES have NO special form to agree with oblique plural nouns in -*ōḍ*. (*meeree gharōḍ-mēē* 'in my houses'; *un-kīi dukaanōḍ-see* 'from their stores').
- As in the case of -*ēē* (*sakak* 'street' vs. *sarkkēē* 'streets': Comment A in the preceding *Word Study*), the sequence . . . VCVC*ōḍ* is often avoided by dropping the second short vowel: . . . VCC*ōḍ*. Thus the feminine nouns:

<i>sakak</i> 'street'	<i>sarkkēē</i> 'streets'	<i>sarkkōḍ-see</i> 'from the streets'
<i>aurat</i> 'woman'	<i>aur(a)lēē</i> 'woman'	<i>aur(a)lōḍ-kaa</i> 'of women'
<i>bahen</i> 'sister'	<i>bah'nēē</i> 'sisters'	<i>bah'nōḍ-koo</i> 'to the sisters'

and the masculine nouns:

<i>šaher</i> 'city, cities'	<i>šahrōḍ-see</i> 'from the cities'
<i>saaheb</i> 'gentleman, gentlemen'	<i>saa'hbōḍ-koo</i> 'to gentlemen'

- loog* 'people' (meaning: 'persons') is a plural masculine noun: *aḷḷhee loogōḍ-koo* 'to good people'. *loog* is also frequently used after any noun or pronoun denoting living creatures: *kisaan-loog* 'farmers', *ustaad-loog* 'teachers', *beeṭee-loog* 'sons'. It characterizes these expressions as plurals. This is especially true of *ham-loog* 'we', since some people use the simple *ham* in the meaning 'I'.

The oblique form of *-loog-* expressions have the ending *-ōō* only once, at the end: *kisaan-loogōō-see*, *beeTee loogōō-par*, *ham-loogōō-kee paas*. That is, *kisaan*, *beeTee*, and *ham* are treated as though they were adjectives qualifying *loog*. Compare *aī'hee loogōō-see* 'with good people' with *beeTee-loogōō-see* 'with the sons'.

B. WORDS IN *-AIAA*, *-AEE*, *-AII*.

naee ghar-mēē 'in a new house'

naiaa 'new' is treated just like *rupaiaa* 'rupee' and, in fact, all other "changing" nouns and adjectives in . . . *aiua*. Its *-ee-* form is *nace* (without the *-i-*): *naee ghar* 'new houses'; *nace gharōō-mēē* 'in new houses'.

Similarly, its *-ii-* form (feminine) is *naii*: *naii ēiiz* 'new thing'; *dukanēē naii hāī* 'the shops are new'; *naii sarkōō-par* 'on the new streets'.

D. MORE ABOUT "THIS, THAT, HIS, HER, ITS, THEIR."

The following tables supplement *Comment D* in the preceding Unit. Again, make sure to have absolutely complete command of this set of forms.

us šaher-see 'from that city'
us-kee šaher-see 'from his, her city'
un-kee šaher-see 'from their city'

un šah'rōō-see 'from those cities'
us-kee šah'rōō-see 'from his, her cities'
un-kee šah'rōō-see 'from their cities'

C. SUBJUNCTIVE AND COMMAND FORM OF *LEENAA* AND *DEENAA*.

- ku'h aur namak liijiiee* 'please take some more salt'
- ham aap-koo doo* 'We'll give you two rupees'
rupaee dēē-gee

- The *-iiee* form (polite command) of *leenaa* 'to take' is *liijiiee* 'please take'. This rhymes with *diijiiee* 'please give', as do all forms of these two verbs.
- In the subjunctive (cautious statement or question) and in the future in *-gaa* (*-gee*, *-giī*), the stems of *lee-* 'to take' and *dee-* 'to give' are replaced by *l-* and *d-*.

<i>kiaa māī lūū</i>	'shall I take?'
<i>mujh-koo dee</i>	'he may give it to me'
<i>aap paisaa dēē-gee</i>	'you will give money, you will pay.'

is šaher-see 'from this city'
is-kee šaher-see 'from his, her city'
in-kee šaher-see 'from their city'
in šah'rōō-see 'from these cities'
is-kee šah'rōō-see 'from his, her cities'
in-kee šah'rōō-see 'from their cities'

us juutee-mēē 'in that shoe'
us-kee juutee-mēē 'in his, her shoe'
un-kee juutee-mēē 'in their shoe'

un juutōō-koo 'to those shoes'
us-kee juutōō-koo 'to his, her shoes'
un-kee juutōō-koo 'to their shoes'

us putlii-koo 'to that puppet'
us-kii putlii-koo 'to his, her puppet'
un-kii putlii-koo 'to their puppet'

un putliiōō-koo 'to those puppets'
us-kii putliiōō-koo 'to his, her puppets'
un-kii putliiōō-koo 'to their puppets'

E. IS LIIEE, KIS LIIEE

is liiee 'therefore'

Note the distinction between *is-kee liiee* 'for this (for him, her, it) and *is liiee* 'therefore'. This, of course, is much like *is ghar-mēē* 'in this house' versus *is-kee ghar-mēē* 'in his, her, its house'. (*is liiee* literally '(for) THIS sake' vs. *is-kee liiee* '(for) the sake OF him, for his sake').

Similarly: *kis liiee* 'what for?' vs. *kis-kee liiee* 'for whom?'

F. TWO CONFLICTING SUBJECTS.

meerii biiuii aur māi xuṣii-see aaūū-gaa 'my wife and I will gladly come'.

is juutee-mēē 'in this shoe'
is-kee juutee-mēē 'in his, her shoe'
in-kee juutee-mēē 'in their shoe'

in juutōō-koo 'to these shoes'
is-kee juutōō-koo 'to his, her shoes'
in-kee juutōō-koo 'to their shoes'

is putlii-koo 'to this puppet'
is-kii putlii-koo 'to his, her puppet'
in-kii putlii-koo 'to their puppet'

in putliiōō-koo 'to these puppets'
is-kii putliiōō-koo 'to his, her puppets'
in-kii putliiōō-koo 'to their puppets'

In this sentence there is one verb-expression ("will come") but two different SUBJECTS (= the noun expression which makes the verb either singular or plural, and either masculine or feminine). *meerii biiuii* would require *aaee-gii*, while *māi* (a male speaking) requires *aaūū-gaa*. In such cases of conflict, the verb in the usage of many speakers usually agrees with the subject which happens to stand closer to it in the sentence, in this case *māi*.

G. "I HAVE, I'VE GOT".

1. *raam laal-koo thoorkaa kaam hai* 'Mr. Ram Lal has some work (to do)'
mujh-koo uakt nahī 'I have no time'

2. *aap-kee paas kīaa hai* 'What have you got?'
un-kee paas hōtal hai 'They have a hotel'
hamāaree paas phal hāī 'We have fruit[s]'
3. *kīaa aap-kee kōōīī baal-baṛṛee hāī?* 'Do you have any children?'
meerīī doo beerīīāā hāī 'I have two daughters'

There is no direct Hindustani equivalent for "I have; I've got". Here are three common expressions which Hindustani speakers use where we would say "to have".

- (1) *mujh-koo uakt hai* 'TO ME time is, I have time'. This type is used for "having" time, trouble, hope and other "abstract" entities.
- (2) *meeree paas ghar hai* 'AT ME houses are, I have houses'. This type is used chiefly to denote ownership of concrete objects such as money, houses, clothes, etc.
- (3) *meerīī doo larkīīāā hai* 'MINE are two daughters, I

have two daughters'. This type is used for a variety of situations. Our examples so far refer to the "having" of relatives, friends, etc.

Note that in all three cases the verb agrees, of course, with the thing or person "possessed" rather than the possessor.

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study

(Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Hindustani, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Go through the Basic Sentences covering up the English and reading aloud the Hindustani. Check up

on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Here are some more sentences with blanks for you to fill in:

1. It takes only fifteen minutes
sirf pandraa minar ----- hāī.

2. I charge only fifteen rupees
sirf pandraa rupae ----- hũũ.
3. He brings fresh eggs every day
uoo rooz-rooz taazee anbee ----- hai
4. The food seems good
khaanaa aĩħhaa ----- hai.
5. She'll show you the restaurant
uoo aap-koo khaanee-kii dukaan -----.
6. I cannot see the house from here
māĩ iahāũ-see ghar ----- saktāa.
7. What are you doing?
aap kiaa ----- hāĩ.
8. What do you say?
aap kiaa ----- hāĩ.
9. What are you eating?
aap kiaa ----- hāĩ.
10. The house is near the market
ghar bazaar-kee ----- hai.
11. My brother is a very poor man
meeraa bhaaii bahot aadmii ----- hai.
12. My brother is a very bad man
meeraa bhaaii bahot ----- aadmii hai.

Read aloud the following and pick out the expressions you think most suitable.

13. Your friend invites you and your wife to dinner:
a. *šaaed aap biiuui-kee saath khaanee-kee liĩce aaĩĩĩĩ'*

- b. *meeru biiuui aur māĩ xušin-see aaũũ-gaa.*
- c. *aap kal raat-koo baĩĩĩĩ-kee saath aaĩĩ.*

14. You say your wife cannot come because her father is not well.
a. *uoo nahĩĩ aa saktii kiĩĩ-kee us-kee baap aĩĩħee nahĩĩ.*
b. *uoo nahĩĩ aa saktii kiĩĩ-kee us-kee mām-baap bhii aĩĩħee hāĩ.*
c. *uoo nahĩĩ aa saktii kiĩĩ-kee us-kee baap gariib aadmii hāĩ.*
15. He needs to rest:
a. *uoo soonee-kee kamree-mĩĩ hāĩ.*
b. *un-koo aaraam karnaa ĩaahĩĩee.*
c. *un-koo ghar-mĩĩ rah'naa ĩaahĩĩee.*
16. Therefore she has too much work:
a. *uoo ghar-kaa kaam kartii hai.*
b. *is liĩce us-koo bahot kaam hai.*
c. *us-kaa kaam bahot saxt hai.*
17. Her sister will soon get married:
a. *šaaed us-kii larkii jaldii šaadii karee.*
b. *us-kii bahen jaldii šaadii karee-gii.*
c. *us-kee xaauĩĩd jaldii šaadii karĩĩ.*
18. Won't you come without her?
a. *kiaa aap-kii ĩiĩĩĩ nahĩĩ aatii.*
b. *us-kaa kaam bahot saxt hai.*
c. *kiaa us-kee bagair aap nahĩĩ aaĩĩ-gee?*

Read the following questions aloud and be ready to speak out the answer to each one. Make your answers brief and to the point.

19. *aap-kee ualdain kaisee hāī.*

20. *kiaa aap-kee baal-baḥḥee hāī?*

21. *aap iahāū kab-see rah'tee hāī.*

22. *aap-kii umar kiaa hai.*

23. *kiaa kooī aur aap-kee saath rah'taa hai?*

24. *aap-kee baap kaam kahāū kartee hāī.*

25. *kiaa aap khaanaa namak-kee bagair pasand kartee hāī?*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hindustani for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand,

by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 16B, after 1st spiral.

1. Jim comes to Mr. Das' store.

Jim: *māī kuḥ naee kapree xariidnaa ḥaah'taa hūū.
kiaa aap-kee paas kapree hāī?*

Das: *jii hā. meeree paas sab kisim-kee kapree hāī.
kis-kee liice. kiaa aap-kee liice?*

Jim: *jii nahī. doo beetōō-kee liice.*

Das: *un-kii umar kiaa hai.*

Jim: *eek teeraa baras-kaa hai, aur duusraa ḥaudaa baras-kaa.*

Das: *too ice kapree deekhiice.
too uoo bahot aḥḥee hāī, aur māh'gee nahī.*

Jim: *uoo ač'hee dikhlee hāī.*
un-kaa daam kiaa hai.

Das: *aap-kee liice, sirf aṭhaaraa rupaeē.*

Jim: *uoo bahot hai.*
māī sirf giaaraa rupaeē dee saktaa hūū.

Das: *giaaraa rupaeē kaafī nahīī. janaab.*
meereē bahot baal-bač'ce hāī,
meereē doo beēce, aur čaar beētiā hāī,
aur meerīī biīūī-kee ualdain bhīī iahā hāī rah'ee
hāī.
us-keē baap biīmaar aadmīī hāī,
uoo kaam nahīī kar saktee, aur un-koo aaraam
karnaa čaahiīce.
too uoo sab dīn sooteē hāī.
mujh-koo un sab loogōō-kee liice khaanaa xariidnaa
čaahiīce.
aur khaanaa paīseē-keē baḡair kaiśee xariidūū,
is-liice, aṭhaaraa rupaeē, meereē xiaal-mēē bahot
nahīī.

Jim: *māī bhīī ḡariīb aadmīī hūū.*
meeraa baal-bač'cee hamēēšaa bhuukee hāī,
māī kaarxaanee-mēē kaam kartaa hūū, aur meeraa
kaam bahot saxt hai.
māī aap-koo baaraa rupaeēē dūū-gaa.
leekin ziaadaa paīśaa nahīī dee saktaa.

Das: *ač'haa janaab. baaraa rupaeē kaafī hāī.*

Record 16B, after 2nd spiral.

2. Jim talks about his new servant.

meeraa naīāa naukar husain-kaa¹ čhootaa bhaaiī
ghar-mēē sab kisim-kaa kaam karee-gaa.
abhīī too sirf kamrōō-kaa kaam kartaa hai.
leekin maaluum hootaa hai, keē pakaanaa bhīī ač'haa
jaantaa hai.
us-kīī umar, aṭhaaraa baras-kīī hai.
šaadīī-šudaa nahīī, leekin šaaed jaldīī šaadīī karee.

¹ The record has *husain,-kaa* by mistake.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. Paul and Das meet in the street. Paul inquires after the health of Das' family. Das tells him that his sister is going to get married next week. Paul asks which sister, does he know her, how old is she, and inquires where the wedding will be, at what time,

etc. Unfortunately, he will not be able to come, because of too much work.

2. Your friend Das is coming for dinner. Show him your new house; bedrooms, dining room, living room. Inquire after his family. After dinner ask him if he wants to go to the movies with you.
3. You are looking for a cook and interview several applicants. Ask them about their families, where they're living, etc. Settle on a salary and send the applicant out to buy some new clothes.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

a

<i>aadmii</i>	man
<i>uaraam</i>	the rest
<i>aaraam karnaa</i>	to rest
<i>ab</i>	now
<i>afsoos</i>	sorrow
<i>mujh-koo afsoos hai</i>	that's too bad!
<i>aThaaraa</i>	eighteen
<i>aurat (-ii)</i>	woman

baŕŕaa
 (-ee) *bagair*
baras
beeTii (-ii)
biis
bhuukaa
biis
budh

ŕaudaa

dikhnaa

din

b

child
 without . . .
 year
 daughter
 twenty
 hungry
 twenty
 Wednesday

ŕ

fourteen

d

to seem, to appear, to be
 visible
 day

<i>gariib</i>	<i>g</i>	poor	<i>saniil'ar</i>	<i>s</i>	Saturday
<i>iluaar</i>	<i>i</i>	Sunday	<i>sattraa</i>		seventeen
<i>jauaan</i>	<i>j</i>	young	<i>saxt</i>		strenuous, hard
<i>jumaa</i>		Friday	<i>soolaa</i>		sixteen
<i>jumraat (-ii)</i>		Thursday	<i>soomuaar</i>		Monday
			<i>soonaa</i>		to sleep
<i>kaarxaanaa</i>	<i>k</i>	factory	<i>šaadii (-ii)</i>	<i>š</i>	wedding
<i>kamraa</i>		room	<i>šaadii karnaa</i>		to get married
<i>kapRee</i>		clothes	<i>šaadii-šudaa</i>		married
<i>kooii</i>		any, anyone			
<i>liijiiee</i>	<i>l</i>	please take	<i>taiiaar</i>	<i>t</i>	ready
			<i>teeraa</i>		thirteen
<i>māā (-ii)</i>	<i>m</i>	mother			
<i>māā-baaṣ</i>		parents		<i>u</i>	father
<i>mangal</i>		Tuesday	<i>uaalid</i>		parents
<i>naiaa</i>	<i>n</i>	new	<i>uaaldain</i>		and so forth
<i>namak</i>		salt	<i>uagairaa</i>		hope
<i>naukar</i>		servant	<i>ummiid (-ii)</i>		age
			<i>umar (-ii)</i>		nineteen
			<i>unaiis</i>		
<i>pakaanaa</i>	<i>p</i>	to cook (something)		<i>x</i>	husband
<i>pandraa</i>		fifteen	<i>xaauind</i>		
<i>phir</i>		but	or <i>xāāuind</i>		gladly
<i>piaasaa</i>		thirsty	<i>xušiī-xušiī</i>		

THE WEATHER

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 17A, beginning.

Mr. Das discusses the weather with his servant, Husein.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

Das:

Husein!

Husein, see what the weather's like!

power

wind

Is there a very strong wind?

Husein:

rain

is being

No, but it's raining.

(your) own umbrella

outside

You can't go out without your umbrella.

AIDS TO LISTENING

ai husain,

ai husain, deekhoo. din kaisaa hai.

zoor.

hauaa.

kiaa bahot zoor-kii hauaa hai?

baariś.

hoo rahii hai.

jii nahī. leekin baariś hoo rahii hai.

apnii ĩhatrī,

baahar.

apnii ĩhatrī-kee bagair, aap baahar jaa nahī saktee.

raincoat
For rain a raincoat's better than an umbrella.

[Das]:¹

Bring me my raincoat then!

on account of the cold
warm
Because it's cold I have to buy some warm
clothes.

Where can I get some warm clothes?

Husein:
difficult

That's a very difficult matter, sir.

There isn't any clothing store in the neighborhood.

You have to go in your car.

Das:
till ending

Then I'll wait until the rain is over.

dirty *or* muddy
On account of the rain the roads are very muddy.

[the danger]¹
And so it's dangerous to go by car.

¹ Not on record.

barsaatii.
baariṣ-kee liīee, ṣhatrīi-see, barsaatīi aṣṣhīi hai.

too meerīi barsaatīi laaoo.

Thandīi-kīi uajaa-see,
garam.
Thandīi-kīi uajaa-see, mujh-koo, kuṣh garam kapree
xariidnaa ṣaahiīee.

mujh-koo, garam kapree, kahā mil saktee hāī?

muṣkil.

uoo bahot muṣkil baat hai junaab;
iahā-kee ṣariib, kooī kapṛō-kīi dukaan nahī.
aap-koo apnīi mootar-see jaanaa ṣaahiīee.

(1) *xatam hoonee-tak.*
(2) *xatam hoonee-tak,*
too māī baariṣ xatam hoonee-tak Thairū-gaa.

mailaa.
baariṣ-kīi uajaa-see, sarkē bahot mailī hāī.

[*xatraa*]¹
aur is liīee, mootar-see jaanee-mēē, bahot xatraa hai.

Record 17B, beginning.

[Das:]¹

But tell me!

the weather
such

Is the weather here always like this?

[Husein:]¹

the same

[No] it never stays the same.

sometimes
like today

Sometimes there's a lot of rain, like today.

entirely
cloud

But in summer there aren't any clouds at all.

the sunshine
the moon
the sun
clear

There's a lot of sunshine in the daytime.

And at night the moon's as bright as the sun.

the sky
the star
(they) are visible

And [at times] there are thousands of stars in the sky.

¹ Not on record.

phir mujh-koo bataaoo,

*mausam,
aisaa,*

kiaa iahāā-kaa mausam, hameeśaa aisaa hai?

ekk taraa.

hameeśaa eek taraa nahī.

*kabhii kabhii,
aaj-kii taraa,*

kabhii kabhii, aaj-kii taraa, bahot baariś hootii hai.

*bilkul.
baadal,*

leekin garmii-mēē bilkul baadal nahī.

*dhuup,
ēāād,
suuraj,
saaf.*

din-mēē bahot dhuup hai.

aur raat-koo ēāād, suuraj-kii taraa saaf hai.

*aasmaan,
sitaaraa,
dikhtee hāi.*

aur aasmaan-mēē bahot sitaaree dikhtee hāi.

I like summer best of all.

Das:

the snow falls

Does it ever snow?

Husein.

Not around here.

the fog

the cold

the fever

In the winter we only get fog, and many people
get a cold and fever from it.

So I like to stay in my house in the winter.

The fog doesn't bother you inside the house.

Record 18A, beginning.

Das:

the least

I hate fog.

to travel

It makes traveling very difficult.

the climate

I don't like the climate here.

māi garmii-kaa mausam, sab-see ziaadaa pasand kartaa hūū.

baraf girtii hai,

kiaa kabhii baraf girtii hai?

is taraf nahī.

koh^oraa.

zukaam.

buxaar.

*Thandii-mēē sirf koh^oraa hai, aur bahot loogōō-koo, us-see
zukaam aur buxaaaar hootaa hai.*

1) *is liiee, Thandii-mēē, māi apnee ghar-mēē rah^enaa pasand
kartaa hūū.*

2) *is liiee, māi Thandii-mēē, apnee ghar-mēē rah^enaa pasand
kartaa hūū.
ghar-kee andar, koh^oree-kaa kuch xatraa nahī.*

sab-see kam,

koh^oraa, sab-see kam pasand kartaa hūū.

safar karnaa,

us-kii uajaa-see, safar karnaa bahot muškil hai.

aab-o-hauaa,

mujh-koo iahāū-kii aab-o-hauaa pasand nahī.

Is it still raining?

Husein:

Yes, sir.

It's still raining.

Das:

That's a shame.

I don't think I'll get any new clothes today.

kiaa abhii-tak baariś hoo rahii hai?

jii hāṁ janaab.

ṣaani abhii-tak gir rahaa hai.

afsoos-kii baat.

meeraa xiaal hai kee aaj mujh-koo, nace kapree nahii milē-gee.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. The *h* in the Hindustani word for "fog" has a whispered °. When you pronounce the word, you keep your lips rounded (in the position they have for the first *o*) while you breathe out the *h*.

Record 18A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 1

koh°raa

'fog'

**doh°raa*

'double'

Observe your pronunciation of the "n" in "sinner", "singer", "finger", "tinker". In "sinner" you make an

*Words marked with asterisk are at this point for pronunciation practice only.

"n" with the tip of your tongue. In "singer" you make a similar sound with the back of your tongue. "finger" is different again; here you have the same sound as in "singer" followed by a "hard g". And in "tinker" you have the same sound followed by a "k".

In Hindustani, "ng" is the combined sound of "finger", not the simple sound of "singer".

Record 18A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 2

mangal

'Tuesday'

**jangal*

'woods, jungle'

narangii

'orange'

Notice, on the other hand, that in such phrases as *bahen-kaa* 'of my sister', *in-koo* 'to them', *un-kaa* 'of

*Words marked with asterisk are at this point for pronunciation practice only.

them', the "n" is pronounced with the tip of the tongue as in "sin" or "sinner" rather than with the "n" in "tinker" or "ink".

Record 18A, after 3rd spiral.

Practice 3

bahen-kou
in-koo

"of my sister"
"to them"

2. Word stress. Loudness of syllables is something very important in English: "the transport" (with loud first syllable) is different from "to transport" (with loud second syllable). As we have said already, Hindustani keeps its syllables to a much more even scale of loudness. English speakers must avoid bearing down on one syllable and neglecting the others. In Hindustani, long syllables, that is, those containing long vowels will impress you as being slightly louder than short vowel syllables. Short vowels before consonant plus vowel may sound to you especially weak. In the word *aspataal*, for example, the first syllable appears to be louder than the second, but not so loud as the third. In some speakers' pronunciation the first vowel of words like *sipaahii* all but vanishes. While you may imitate these effects cautiously, the important thing is, of course, to keep the short and long vowels properly apart.

3. Breath groups, emphasis and pitch. As you go on you must pay more and more attention to the way in which continuous speech is phrased into smaller groups, and to the different inflections of voice which charac-

terize different kinds of groups. The little pauses which cut a stretch of continuous speech into groups are marked by the punctuation marks, period, comma, and question mark. Where there is no such mark, the flow of speech is not interrupted. Do not allow yourselves to be deceived by the gaps between words—they do NOT indicate pauses in actual talk. English is in no way different. Although we WRITE the sentence "We don't want to see him" with gaps between the words, it would be quite wrong to PRONOUNCE the gaps by stopping after every word. A string of words marked by real little pauses (punctuation marks) we may call BREATH GROUP.

Breath groups are characterized by certain inflections of the voice, or pitch. The voice may, for instance, drop off gently at the end. This happens in simple STATEMENTS, and also in questions containing such SPECIFIC QUESTION words as *kaun* (*kis*) 'who, which', *kiaa* 'what, which', *kaisaa* (*-ee, -ii*) 'how', *kab* 'when', *kahāā* 'where', *kiōō* 'why'. All this, again, is very similar to English. (Note, however, that the specific question words (the *k*-words just listed) are emphasized in the sentence by an extra high pitch.) We shall indicate the dropping inflection by a PERIOD. Listen to the record or to your Guide:

Record 18A, after 4th spiral.

Practice 4

iee khaanee-kii dukaan hai. 'this is a restaurant.'

iee kiāa hai. 'what is this?'

aap amriikaa-see hāī. 'you are from America.'
aap káhāā-see hāī. 'where are you from?'
uoo bahot ačhīī hai. 'she is very well.'
uoo káisiī hai. 'how is she?'
aap meeree saath jaaēē-gee. 'you will go with me.'
aap kīs-kee saath jaaēē-gee. 'with whom will you go?'

The type of question mentioned above we call "specific" because when using question words, "how", "who", "why", you expect something more detailed for an answer than just "yes" or "no". Simple YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS are different, much as in English. They are spoken with a sharply rising inflection. In writing Hindustani, we indicate rising voice (and only this) by a QUESTION MARK. Listen to your Guide (or the speaker on the record) when he contrasts statements or specific questions with yes-or-no questions.

Record 18A, after 5th spiral.

Practice 5

aap samjhee. 'you understood.'
aap samjhee? 'did you understand?'
kiaa aap samjhee? 'did you understand?'
aap meeree saath jaaēē-gee 'you will go with me.'
aap meeree saath kahāā jaaēē-gee. 'where will you go with me?'
kiaa aap meeree saath jaaēē-gee? 'will you go with me?'

In listing things (or in saying disconnected words, such as the new items preceding each of the *Basic Sentences* in this course), and in setting off the smaller

parts of a sentence, the voice is slightly raised. We indicate this by writing a COMMA. The basic sentences are full of examples for this particular kind of pitch.

In the *Basic Sentences* and *Listening In* exercises, the pitches are marked in accordance with the phonograph Records (except where the speaker on the records has made a definite mistake). In matters of periods and question marks your Guides will usually agree with the records, but they may insert commas in places where the records have no pause at all, or vice versa. Imitate them carefully.

In a few instances the speaker on the record uses a fourth inflection indicating something like hesitation. It consists in keeping the voice even, and is marked by SEMICOLON.

Within one breath group there is usually one word which is emphasized by a higher pitch and a somewhat louder stress. In this matter, as in the other points discussed so far, Hindustani is so similar to English that you will hardly ever go wrong, especially if you follow your Guide closely. Remember, however, that specific *k*-question words are so emphasized; the same is also true in the usage of many speakers regarding *hūū*, *hai* or *hāī* when used by themselves, meaning 'to be there, to be present' or in such phrases as *meeree paas hai* 'I have': in these cases the verb "to be" may get the emphasis. Ordinarily, however, *hai*, etc., receives no emphasis at all, as in *taah'taa hai*, *aatiī hūū*. On the whole, you had better KEEP YOUR VOICE EVEN and avoid excessive loudness as well as slurring.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. THE LESS POLITE COMMAND FORM.

takliif mat-karoo 'don't take trouble, don't bother!'

aaoo 'come (on)!'

deekhoo 'see, look!'

bataaoo 'tell!'

barsaatii laaoo 'bring the raincoat'

In giving a person a command or order you use the stem of the verb with the ending *-oo*. This form is less polite than the one in *-iice*. Other examples are:

čaloo 'move, go!'

piioo 'drink!'

dhoouoo 'wash!' (some speakers will say *dhoouoo* instead).

B. -TAK.

baariš xatam hoonee-tak 'until the rain('s) ending'.

abhii-tak 'up to now, still'

-tak 'up to, as far as, till' is a particle:

mujh-tak 'as far as I'

nadii-kee kinaaree-tak 'up to the bank of the river.'

C. -EE PAII*LEE, -EE ANDAR.

šaher-koo jaancee-kee pah'lee 'before going to town, before one goes to town'

ghar-kee andar 'inside the house'

pah'lee 'before' and *andar* 'inside' are used as though they were masculine oblique nouns, just like *liice*, *paas*, etc. (See Comment F, Unit 5):

hamaaree pah'lee 'before us'

us-kee andar 'inside him, her, it'

D. -II TARAF, -II TARAA.

1. *baaīi taraf* 'to the left'

is taraf 'in this direction, hereabouts; this way'

2. *eek taraa* 'in one and the same way'

aa-j-kīi taraa 'in to day's manner, like today'

čāād suuraj-kīi taraa saaf hai 'the moon is clear in the manner of the sun, like the sun, as the sun'.

The words . . . *taraf* 'in such and such a direction; this or that way', and . . . *taraa* 'in such and such a manner; like . . . ; as . . . ' are treated like oblique feminine nouns:

is taraf 'in this direction'

is imaat-~~par~~ 'in this building'

meerii taraf 'in my direction'

meerii dukaan-mēē 'in my shop'

barce šaher-kīi taraf 'towards the big city'

meeree beete-kīi bīiuii-koo 'to my brother's wife'

us taraa 'that way, like that, thus'

us larkīi-koo 'to that girl'

<i>hamaarii taraa</i> 'our way, like us	<i>hamaarii mooTar-see</i> 'with our car'
<i>hindustaan-kii taraa</i> 'like India'	<i>hindustaan-kii fauj-see</i> 'from India's army'

Notes:

1. *taaraa* does not, of course, change its ending.
2. Distinguish: *is taraf* 'in this direction'
is-kii taraf 'in his, her, its direction'
is taraa 'in this manner, this way, like
this, thus'
is-kii taraa 'in his (her, its) manner,
like him (her, it)'
3. Distinguish "that way", indicating a direction: *us taraf*, from "that way" indicating a manner or fashion: *us taraa*.

E. *APNAA*.

apnii chatrii-kee bagair aap baahar jaa nahii saktee "You can't go out without your umbrella"
aap-koo apnii mooTar-see jaanaa chaahiee "You should go in your car."
maai apnee ghar-mēē rah'naa pasand kartaa hūū "I like to stay in MY house"

You are familiar with the adjective expressions *meeraa* 'my'; *hamaaraa* 'our'; *aap-kaa* 'you'; *us-kaa, is-kaa* 'his, her, its'; *un-kaa, in-kaa* 'their'. In a broad sense, all these words describe a thing or person as belonging to another person or thing:

<i>meerii mooTar</i> 'my car'
Possessor: 'I'—possessed: 'car'
<i>un-kee naam</i> 'their names'
Possessor: 'they'—possessed: 'names'

These words are used **ONLY** when the possessor is **NOT** the same person or thing as the agent of the verbal action. If, however, possessor and actor are identical, the word for 'my, your, their, her, his, its, our' is *apnaa* (-ee, -ii). Contrast:

maai apnee ghar-mēē rah'taa hūū 'I live in MY house'
uoo-loog apnee ghar-mēē rah'tee hai 'THEY live in THEIR house'
uoo-loog meeree ghar-mēē rah'tee hai 'THEY live in MY house'
maai un-kee ghar-mēē rah'taa hūū 'I live in THEIR house'
meeree liiee khaanaa pakaatii hai 'SHE cooks food for ME'
apnee liiee khaanaa pakaatii hai 'SHE cooks food for HERSELF'

F. *HOO RAHII HAI, GIR RAHAA THAA, ETC.*

Contrast:

kiaa abhii-tak baariś hoo rahii hai? 'is rain still being? i.e. is it still raining (right now?)'
paanii abhii-tak gir rahaa hai 'Water is still in the process of falling, it is still raining (right now)'
bahot baariś hootii hai 'It rains much (in general)'
kiaa baraf kabhii girtii hai? 'Does it ever snow?'

The verb stem plus *rahaa* (-*ee*, -*ii*) plus the verb 'to be' is used when one moment out of a continuous event is considered: "right now it is raining"; *khaa rahii hāi* 'they (women) are eating (at a given moment; but *khaatii hāi* 'they eat' [twice every day; no meat; etc.]).

Also note: *baariś hoo rahii thii* 'it WAS raining (just then); *mujh-koo dikhaa rahē thee* 'they WERE just showing me something (when that and that happened)'.

G. "BETTER, BEST; MORE, MOST".

īhatrii-see barsaatii kooṭ aīlhaa hai 'a raincoat is better than an umbrella'

māi garmii-kaa mausam sab-see ziaadaa pasand kartaa hūū 'I like the summer best (of all ["better than all"] seasons).'

māi kohṛaa sab-see kam pasand kartaa hūū 'I like fog least (of all)'

There is no simple equivalent of the English "er" in "greater", or "more . . ." in "MORE beautiful". All you

say in Hindustani is "the raincoat is 'GOOD FROM' (better than) an umbrella." The words *ziaadaa* 'much, more' and *kam* 'little, less' are often found in comparison phrases containing -*see* 'than'. *sab-see aīlhaa* 'good from all (better than all)' is the Hindustani equivalent of 'best'.

H. "TO GET, OBTAIN".

mujh-koo garam kapree kahā milēe hāi 'where are warm clothes available to me, where do I get warm clothes?'

mujh-koo kapree milē-ge 'To me clothes will be available, I shall obtain clothes'

The verb *milnaa* 'to meet' is also used in the meaning 'to be available'. In this case the idiomatic English expression would be 'to get, receive, obtain, find'. Note that the subject of *milnaa* is the THING obtained, and the person who obtains it is put into the oblique case followed by the particle -*koo*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the

English and reading aloud the Hindustani. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

Here are some more sentences with blanks for you to fill in:

1. On account of the rain I can't go out
baariš- --- ----- māi baahar jaa nahīi saktaa.
2. He looks like a sailor
uoo jahaazii- --- ----- dikhtaa hai.
3. For soldiers the movie is not expensive
----- --- ----- sinamaa māh'gaa nahīi.
4. I eat salt with the food
māi khaanee- --- ----- namak khaataa hūū.
5. Against a strong wind an umbrella is no good
zoor-kii hauaa- --- ----- ḡhatrīi ačḡhīi nahīi.
6. Without her they won't come
----- - --- ----- nahīi aaēē-gee.
7. I am going to town with my sister
māi ----- bahen-kee saath ṣaher-koo jaataa hūū.
8. My wife lives with my parents
----- bīiuii ----- ualdain-kee saath rah'tīi hai.
9. My wife lives with her parents
----- bīiuii ----- ualdain-kee saath rah'tīi hai.
10. Please take off my shoes
----- juutaa utaariiee.
11. Please take off your shoes
----- juutaa utaariiee.
12. I am now eating
māi abhīi ----- hūū.
13. I eat at twelve o'clock
māi baaraa bajee ----- hūū.
14. My mother is preparing the food
meerii māā khaanaa ----- hāi.

Read aloud the following and pick out the expressions you think most suitable.

15. This is the highest building in town:
 - a. *īee ṣaher-mēē sab-see ūūēii imaatat hai.*
 - b. *is ṣaher-mēē bahot ūūēii imaatēē hāi.*
 - c. *is ṣaher-mēē sab imaatēē ūūēii hāi.*
16. The hotel is bigger than the hospital:
 - a. *hootal-see aspataal baraa hai.*
 - b. *aspataal-see hootal baraa hai.*
 - c. *hootal sab-see baraa hai.*
17. Where can I get some new shoes?
 - a. *nace juutee kahāā beeētee hāi.*
 - b. *mujh-koo nace juutee kahāā miltee hāi.*
 - c. *mujh-koo nace juutee xariidnaa ṣaahiiee.*
18. Does it ever snow in India?
 - a. *kiaa hindustaan-mēē baariš kabhīi hootīi hai?*
 - b. *kiaa hindustaan-mēē paanii kabhīi girtaa hai?*
 - c. *kiaa hindustaan-mēē barai kabhīi girtīi hai?*

Read the following questions aloud and be ready to speak out the answer to each one. Make your answers brief and to the point.

19. *kiaa iahāā-kaa mausam aap-koo pasand hai?*
20. *kiaa aap koh'ree-see baariš ziaadaa pasand kartee hāi?*
21. *aap-koo kab paisaa milee-gaa.*
22. *kiaa aasmaan-par suuraj dikhtaa hai?*

23. *baariś-kee liice, kis k̄isim-kaa koot sab-see ziaadaa ač̄ḥaa hai.*

24. *aap kab-tak iahaa rahē-gee.*

25. *kiaa aaj kal-see ziaadaa thanḍii hai?*

26. *aap kis uajee-see iahāā rah'tee hāī.*

27. *kiaa aap apnaa kaam pasand kartee hāī?*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hindustani for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by your Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 18A, after 6th spiral.

1. Preparing for rainy weather.

Das: *bhaai mujh-koo bataaoo, chatrii kahāā miltii hai. meeraa xiaal hai kee baariś hoonee-kaa xatraa hai.*

Aziz: *duusrīi sarak-par, bahot barii dukaan hai. uahāā chatriiāā beečtee hāī.*

Das: *šukriiaa. kiaa iahāā-see baaīi taraf hai?*

Aziz: *jii nahīi janaab, siidhee jaaiiee, aur phir aap-kee daaii taraf dukaan hai.*

Das: *meeraa xiaal hai kee iahāā-see dukaan deekh saktaa hūū.*

Record 18B, beginning.

2. Trying to buy an umbrella.

Das: *salaam janaab. kiaa aap dukandaar hāī?*

dukandaar: *jii hāā. māī dukandaar hūū. aap-kee liice kiaa kar saktaa hūū.*

Das: *mujh-koo baariś-kii uajee-see, ĩhatrui*
xariidnaa ĩaahiice.
kiaa aap-kee paas ĩhatruiiā hāi?

dukandaar: *mujh-koo afsoos hai janaab, leekin māi*
ĩhatruiiā nahīi beeĩtaa.

Das: *too māi kiaa karūū.*
paanii abhii gir rahaa hai,
aur baariś xalam hoonee-tak, māi iahāā
Thair nahīi saktāa.
meerii biiuii aspataal-mēē hai, aur māi
us-koo deekhnaa ĩaah'taa hūū,

dukandaar: *aap aisee baahar nahīi jaa saktee.*
māi aap-koo apni ĩhatrui dūū gaa.

Das: *bahot meherbaanii. māi ĩhatrui, jaldiī*
uaapas laaūū-gaa. xudaa haafiz.

Record 18B, after 1st spiral.

3. Ram Lal's father has a cold.

Aziz: *aap-kee baap ghar-mēē kiōō rah'tee hāi,*

Ram Lal: *uoo kuĥ bimaar hāi.*
rooz-rooz uoo ThanDii-mēē kaam kartee hāi.

Aziz: *uoo kahāā kaam kartee hāi.*

Ram Lal: *isteeśan-mēē.*
un-kaa kaam bahot saxt nahīi.
leekin kabhiī kabhiī, baariś-kii uajee-see, un-
koo zukaam hootaa hai.
too un-koo ghar-mēē rah'naa ĩaahiice.

Aziz: *uoo Thuk hai.*
zukaam-kee liice aaraam karnaa sab-see
aĩĥaa hai.

Record 18B, after 2nd spiral.

4. How is the water in this place?

[Jim:]¹ *salaam.*
kiaa aap hindustaanii samajhtee hāi?

[Das:]¹ *jii hāā janaab. māi aĩĥii tarāa booltaa aur*
samajhtaa hūū.

[Jim:]¹ *kiaa aap is gaaōō-mēē rah'tee hāi?*

Das: *jii hāā. māi aur meeree baal-baĩĥee hameeśaa-see*
iahāā rah'tee hāi.

Jim: *kiaa iahāā piinee-kaa paanii aĩĥaa hai?*

Das: *jii hāā. gaaōō-mēē bahot paanii nahīi. duur-see*
laanaa ĩaahiice. leekin bahot aĩĥaa hai, aur
biimaar hoonee-kaa xatraa nahīi.

Jim: *kiaa abhii bahot loog gaaōō-mēē biimaar hāi?*

Das: *jii nahīi. abhii too aab-o-hauaa aĩĥii hai.*

Record 18B, after 3rd spiral.

5. [Protect yourself from the sun.]¹

[Das:]¹ *kiaa zoor-kii dhuup aap-kee liice aĩĥii nahīi?*

¹Not on record.

[Jim:]¹ *jii nahīi janaab, māi amriikaa-see hūū.
aur aisii saxi dhuup kabhi nahīi hootii.*

Das: *dhuup-mēē baahar mat-jaiiee.
kiōō-kee biimaar hoonee-kaa xatraa hai.*

Jim: *māi too fauj-mēē hūū, kiau karūū, dhuup, garmii,
Thandi, meeree liiee sab eek hai.*

Das: *jii nahīi janaab. māi samajhtaa hūū.
xudaa haafiz.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations

somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. Go to a travel bureau and make arrangements for taking a trip. Inquire about the best means of transportation for you and your friends, the time of departure and arrival, and the probable costs. Find out about the climate of the place where you are going to stay and what sort of clothes you will need.
2. Describe your home to the class—the town, the house, your family and their occupations, and the local climate.
3. You arrive in a village accompanied by a friend who is ill—he has a cold because of the cold weather. Find the nearest hospital and arrange for his transportation there.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

¹ Not on record.

FINDER LIST

aab-o-hauaa (-ii)

aasmaan

ai

aisaa

apnaa

baadal

baahar

baariś (-ii)

baraf (-ii)

barsaatii (-ii)

bilkul

buxaar

ĩāāđ

ĩhatrīi (-ii)

dhuup

garam

girnaa

hauaa (-ii)

kabhīi kabhīi

kam

koh^oraa

koot

a

climate

sky

you!

such, in this way

see *Word Study*

b

cloud

outside

rain

snow, ice

raincoat

entirely

the fever

ē

moon

the umbrella

d

sunshine

g

warm

to fall

h

wind

k

sometimes

less

fog

coat

mailaa

mansam

muškil

rahaa

saaf

safar

safar karnaa

silaaraa

suuraj

-tak

-ii taraa

Thandīi (-ii)

uajaa or *uajee (-ii)*

-ii uajaa-see

xatam hoonaa

xatraa

zoor

zukaam

m

dirty

weather, climate

difficult

r

see *Word Study*

s

clean, clear

the trip, travel

to travel

star

sun

t

until . . .

like, as

r

cold, winter

u

reason

because of,

on account of

x

to be finished, to be ended

the danger

z

power, force

cold (illness)

SCHOOL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 19A, beginning.

Das explains to Paul his work as a teacher of Hindustani.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
Paul: the teacher Are you a teacher?	<i>ustaad,</i> <i>kiaa aap ustaad hāī?</i>
Das: the school to teach Yes, I teach in the school (lit. of) here.	<i>iskuul.</i> <i>sikhaanaa.</i> <i>jii hāū. māī iahāū-kee iskuul-mēē sikhaataa hūū.</i>
Paul: Tell me each day What do you do every day?	<i>mujh-koo bataaīce,</i> <i>har rooz,</i> <i>aap har rooz kiaa kartee hāī.</i>

Das:
 the student
 the class
 At exactly eight A.M. the students come to class.

when
 the noise
 be quiet!
 When they make too much noise I tell them
 [to] be quiet!

the chair
 to sit down
 the book
 the table
 to put down
 Then they take their seats, put their books on
 the table, and the class begins.

Paul:
 to teach
 What do you teach?

Das:
 the Hindustani language
 to try to speak
 The students try to speak Hindustani.

the question
 the answer
 They ask each other questions and give answers.

*taalib-ilm,
 kilaas.
 Thiik aath bajee subaa-mēē, taalib-ilm loog, kilaas-koo aatee
 hāi.*

*jab,
 šoor,
 čup rahoo.
 jab uoo bahot šoor kartee hāi, māi un-koo kah'taa hūū, kee čup
 rahoo.*

*kursii,
 bait'hnaa.
 kitaab,
 meez,
 rakh deenaa.
 too uoo apnii kursiiōō-par bait'htee hāi, apnii kitaabēē meez-
 par rakh deetee hāi, aur kilaas šurun hootaa hai.*

*parhaanaa,
 aap kiaa parhaatee hāi.*

*hindustaanii zabaan.
 boolnee-kii koošiš karnaa.
 taalib-ilm loog, hindustaanii-mēē, boolnee-kii koošiš kartee hāi*

*sauaal,
 jauaab,
 uoo cek duusree-see, sauaal puu'htee hāi, aur jauaab deetee hāi.*

about the news
the conversation
And we talk about the news.

Record 19B, beginning.

be careful!
the mistake
But before we talk I tell them: be careful not to
make mistakes!

Paul:
to write
to learn
Don't they learn to read and write?

Das:
No.

Paul:
the letter
the newspaper
Can't they write a letter and read a newspaper?

Das:
Now they only learn to speak Hindustani but
afterwards they may (perhaps) try to write.

the paper
the pencil
the necessity
They haven't any use for paper and pencil just
now.

xabar-kii baabat.
baatīīl,
aur ham xabar-kii baabat baatīīl kartee hāī.

hušīaar rahoo.
galtīī.
leekin baatīīl karnee-kee pah'lee, māī un-koo kah'īaa hūū, kee
hušīaar rahoo, kuḥh galtīī mat-karoo.

likhnaa.
siikhnaa.
kīaa uoo likhnaa parhnaa nahīī siikhtee?

jīī nahīī.

xat.
axbaar.
kīaa uoo, xat aur axbaar likh parh nahīī saktee?

abhīī uoo sirf hindustaanīī boolnaa siikhtee hāī. leekin us-kee
baad šaaed likhnee-kīī, koošīš karēē.

kaagaz,
pīnsil.
zaruurat,
abhīī un-koo. kaagaz aur pīnsil-kīī zaruurat nahīī.

Paul:
the class
Does anything else happen in your class?

Das:
suddenly
dark
Sometimes the room suddenly goes dark.

Paul:
Why (lit. for what reason)?

Das:
the electric light
broken
The electric light doesn't work [well].

Paul:
What do you do then?

Das:
one of the boys
One of the boys is very good at these things.
to fix
I tell him to fix the light.

Record 20A, beginning.

Paul:
the window
Aren't there any windows in the room?

darjaa.
kiaa aap-kee darjee-mēē kuñ aur hootaa hai?

EEK dam.
andheeraa.
kabhii kabhii, eek dam kamraa andheeraa hootaa hai.

kis uajee-see.

bijlii-kii battii,
Tuutaa.
bijlii-kii battii tuutii hai.

too aap kiaa kartee hāī.

larkōō-mēē-see eek,
larkōō-mēē-see eek, is kaam-mēē, bahot huśiaar hai.

Thiik karnaa.
us-koo kah'taa hūū, battii Thiik karōe.

khirkii.
kiaa kamre-mēē khirkiiā nahī?

Das:
the light
Yes, but at eight A.M. there isn't much light
outside.

rooṣṇii.
jii hāā leekin aarh bajee subaa-mēē, baahar bahot rooṣṇii
nahīī.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

Combination of Consonants. When a *t*, *d*, or *r* comes immediately before or after a *T*, *D*, or *R* in a word or closely-knit phrase, you must make sure to give both sounds the proper value. In careful pronunciation each sound is pronounced by itself with a little catch in between. In rapid speech, you start with the tongue in front (back) position, and, WHILE the sound is held, shift your tongue to the back (front) position.

Record 20A, after 1st spiral.

Practice 1

<i>paṛhṭee hāī</i>	'(they) read, study'
<i>bairṭhīī hūū</i>	'I sit down (fem.)'
<i>bahot ṭhīik</i>	'quite right'
<i>mat-ṭhairoo</i>	'don't stay'

When one "voiceless" (*p t ṭ k k̄ f s ṣ x*) and one "voiced" (*b d ḍ g z ḡ*) consonant come together in a word or closely-knit phrase, the first usually is voiced if the second one is voiced, and voiceless if the second one is voiceless. For instance, if *d* comes before a *p* or *ṭ* or *s*, etc., it may become "voiceless", i.e., be actually pronounced as a *t*. This type of replacement occurs in rapid speech. (See the forms given below in parentheses.)

Record 20A, after 2nd spiral.

Practice 2

<i>koot xariidtee hāī (xariittee)</i>	'(they) buy the coat'
<i>kapṛee bheeṛṭaa hūū (bheeṛṭaa)</i>	'I sell clothes'
<i>hindustaanīī samajṭaa hai (samac(h)ṭaa)</i>	'he understands Hindustani'
<i>eek ghanṭaa (eeg ghanṭaa)</i>	'one hour'

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. KUČH AND KOOI AS NOUNS.

1. *kiaa aap kučh čaah'tee hāi?* 'do you want anything?'
kučh aur hoolaa hai 'something else happens'
2. *kooii aur aap-kee saath rah'taa hai* 'somebody else lives with you'

Used as NOUNS by themselves, i.e., when not describing a following noun, *kučh* means 'something, anything' and *kooii*, 'somebody, someone, anybody, anyone'.

B. KUČH AND KOOI AS ADJECTIVES.

1. *kučh khaanaa* 'some food'
kučh tamaašaa 'some entertainment'
kučh aur namak 'some more salt'
kučh čiižēčē 'some things'
kučh narangiāā nahīi 'not any oranges, no oranges'
kučh garam kapRee 'some warm clothes'
2. *kooii kapRōō-kii dukaan nahīi* 'not any clothes shop, no clothes shop'
kooii baččee 'some children'
kooii naukār nahīi 'not any servants, no servants'

When used as ADJECTIVES (i.e. when describing a following noun), *kučh* and *kooii* correspond to the English 'some, any'. In this construction, *kooii* (rather than *kučh*) is used to emphasize INDIVIDUAL persons and

objects, rather than mass nouns. Compare, for instance:

kučh xabar 'some news, any news'
kooii xabar 'some, any particular news item'

Thus, the meaning of *kooii dukaan nahīi* comes close to 'not one single shop'.

Note (1) *kučh* may also modify another adjective:
kučh biimaar 'somewhat ill'.

- (2) the forms *kučh* and *kooii* are largely straight case forms (that is, not oblique case forms) and are not ordinarily used before particles or noun plus particle.

C. NAHĪI.

1. *uoo nahīi aāēē-gee* 'they won't come'
2. *meeraa xiaal nahīi* 'it is not my opinion, I don't think so'
3. *māi us-koo nahīi jaantaa* 'I don't know him, her'
nahīi by itself or in the phrase *jii nahīi* means 'no'.

1. *nahīi* is the equivalent of 'not' in most sentences expressing a plain statement.

2. Furthermore, with most speakers *nahīi* means 'am not, is not, are not'. In other words, *nahīi* is usually NOT followed by *hūū*, *hai*, *hāi*. Compare:

meeraa xiaal hai 'it is my thought'
meeraa xiaal nahīi 'it is NOT my thought'

3. The same is true of present tense verb forms. Compare:

māi us-koo jaantaa hūū 'I know him'

māi us-koo nahīi jaantaa 'I DON'T know him'

Note: *nahīi* in a breath group is usually emphasized by higher pitch.

D. MAT-

takliif mat-karoo 'don't take trouble, don't bother'

kučh galtiī mat-karoo 'don't make any mistakes'

'not' in expressions of command ("don't . . .") or suggestions is *mat-*. Thus,

mat-karoo 'don't do'

mat-kīijīee 'please don't do'

mat-aāēē 'you ought not to come'

mat-karēē 'you should not do it'

Note: *mat-* usually takes the highest pitch in a breath group.

E. "NOTHING, NOBODY, NO, NONE."

1. *kučh nahīi* 'not anything, NOTHING'

kooīi nahīi 'not anybody, NOBODY'

2. *kučh xatraa nahīi* 'not any danger, NO danger'

kučh narangīiā nahīi 'not any oranges; NO oranges'

kooīi kaprōō-kīi dukaan nahīi 'NO clothes shop'

kooīi naukār nahīi 'NO servants'

3. *kučh galtiī mat-karoo* 'don't make any mistakes, make NO mistakes'

Where English has the simple words, 'nothing, nobody, none, no', Hindustani has to say 'not anything, not anybody, not any, not some'. The choice of *kučh* and *kooīi* follows, of course, the rule given in Comments A ("nothing, nobody, no one") and B ("no"); for *nahīi* and *mat-* see the preceding Comment.

F. DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

un-koo kah'taa hūū kee čup rahoo 'I tell them: be quiet;

I tell them they should be quiet; I tell them to be quiet'

un-koo kah'taa hūū kee hušīaar rahoo 'I tell them: be careful; I tell them they should be careful; I tell them to be careful'

In relating the contents of somebody's utterance or thoughts ("he SAYS THAT . . . , he TELLS me TO . . . , he ASKS WHY . . . , he THINKS: ". . ."), Hindustani often follows a very simple procedure. As a rule, the utterance is given in direct quotation, just the way the speaker says it. There is very little of the "indirect discourse" of English and other languages. Instead of "I shall tell them that they are wrong," Hindustani says: *māi un-koo kahūū-gaa kee aap galat hāi* "I shall tell them : you are wrong." Instead of saying "She asks me what she should do." Hindustani speakers often say *mujh-see puučhtīi hai kee kīaa karūū*. "She asks me : "What should I do?" Literally, then, the *kee* has, in such cases, only the function of a colon. It can also be omitted.

G. SOME REMARKS ON WORD ORDER.

Now that you are familiar with many sentences, a few remarks about the arrangement of words in a sentence are in order. In many instances, word order is optional; in other words, it often does not matter which you put first in a sentence and which later. There are a few things, however, which generally hold true.

1. *māi būmaar hūñ*. 'I am ill'

kiaa aap baal karaāvē? 'Should you have your hair cut?'

uoo iee kitaab kiōō parhtee hāī. 'Why do they read this book?'

The verb form comes at the end of the sentence.

2. *uoo loog iee kitaab parhtee kiōō hāī*. or:

uoo loog iee kitaab kiōō parhtee hāī. 'Why do they read this book?'

aap-kee baap-kii mootar kahā hai. 'Where is your father's car?'

narangiiāā kis-koo bheejūñ. 'To whom shall I send the oranges?'

In SPECIFIC QUESTIONS, the "question word" (*kiaa*, *kaun*, *kiōō*, etc.) comes preferably NOT at the beginning of the sentence (as in English), but later, and often

immediately before the verb. Remember that it is more strongly emphasized than the rest of the sentence.

3. *kiaa uoo aap-kee ghar-par rah'tee hāī?* 'Do they stay in your house?'

andar jaanee-kee pah'lee, kiaa ham-koo juutaa utaarnaa čaahiīee? 'Do we have to take off our shoes before we go inside?'

Yes-or-no questions are often begun with an untranslatable *kiaa*. However, expressions of time, place or manner (especially when they are of some length) may precede the question proper which starts with *kiaa*: "Before taking off our shoes, . . . must we take off our shoes?"

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hindustani, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hindustani. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Here are some more sentences with blanks for you to fill in:

1. Is there any danger.
kiaa kuḥ ----- hai?
2. Is there any news?
kiaa kuḥ ----- hai?
3. Where is the newspaper?
----- kahā hai.
4. How many chairs are there in the room?
kamree-mē kitnī ----- hāi.
5. How many books were there in the room?
kamree-mē kitnī ----- thī.
6. The windows are broken.
----- tuutī hāi.
7. The students come to class every day.
har rooz taalib-ilm kilaas-koo ----- hāi.

8. The students are now coming to class.
abhī taalib-ilm kilaas-koo ----- hāi.
9. What do you learn in school?
iskūl-mē aap kia ----- hāi.
10. The teacher teaches reading and writing.
ustaad likhnaa parhnaa ----- hai.
11. The students make much noise.
taalib-ilm bahot ----- hāi.
12. The students make many mistakes.
taalib-ilm bahot ----- hāi.
13. When does the class begin?
kilaas kab ----- hai.

Read aloud the following and pick out the expressions you think most suitable.

14. The students learn Hindustani.
 - a. *taalib-ilm-loog hindustaanī parhaate hāi.*
 - b. *taalib-ilm-loog hindustaanī sikhate hāi.*
 - c. *taalib-ilm-loog hindustaanī sikhate hāi.*
15. The teacher tells them: be careful!
 - a. *ustaad un-koo kahēta hai kee ḥup rahoo.*
 - b. *ustaad un-koo kahēta hai kee kuḥ galī mat-karoo.*
 - c. *ustaad un-koo kahēta hai kee huṣiār rahoo.*

16. I need a newspaper

- a. *mujh-koo axbaar-kii zaruurat hai.*
- b. *mujh-koo kaagas-kii zaruurat hai.*
- c. *mujh-koo kitaab-kii zaruurat hai.*

17. I talk about India

- a. *māi hindustaanii boolnee-kii kooṣiṣ kartaa hūū.*
- b. *māi hindustaanii pakhnaa nahīi saktaa.*
- c. *māi hindustaan-kii baabat baatṛiit kartaa hūū.*

Read aloud the following questions and be ready to

speak out the answer to each one. Make your answers brief and to the point.

- 18. *is darjee-mēē kitnee taalib-ilm hāi.*
- 19. *aap-kce ustaad-kaa naam kiaa hai.*
- 20. *aap kiaa siikhtce hāi.*
- 21. *kiaa aaj axbaar-mēē kuḥḥ xabar hai?*
- 22. *aap kaun axbaar pakhtce hāi.*
- 23. *aap apnaa kooṛ kahāū rakh deetce hāi.*
- 24. *is kamree-mēē kitnii kursiiā hāi.*
- 25. *apnee doost-see kuḥḥ sauāal puuḥḥiiee.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hindustani for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following con-

versations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 20A, after 3rd spiral.

1. Talking about the climate.

Jim: *iahāū-kce mausam-kii baabat baatṛiit karṛē.*

Fatima: *aḥḥaa. aap mujh-see kuḥḥ sauāal puuḥḥiiee, aur māi aap-koo jauaab deene-kii kooṣiṣ karūū-gii.*

Jim: *too mujh-koo bataaiiee, kiaa iahāā-kaa mausam aap-koo pasand hai?*

Fatima: *jii hāā.
māi iahāā-kaa mausam, sab-see ziaadaa pasand kartii hūū.*

Jim: *kis uajee-see.*

Fatima: *kiōō-kee hameeśaa eek taraa nahīī.
eek din baraf girtii hai, aur duusree din-mēē dhuup hootii hai.
kabhiī kabhiī baadlōō-kii uajaa-see, andheeraa hootaa hai,
aur eek ghanTee-kee baad aasmaan bahot saaf hai.*

Jim: *too aap kabhiī nahīī jaan saktii kee kis kisim-kaa mausam hootaa hai?*

Fatima: *jii hāā. hameeśaa mujh-koo barsaatii-kii zaruurat hai.*

Jim: *meeraa xiaal hai kee meeree liiee iee mausam aēēhaa nahīī.*

Record 20A, after 3rd spiral.

2. Das shows Aziz his new house.

Das: *andar aaiiee janaab, māi aap-koo apnaa naiiaa ghar dikhaanaa ēaah*taa hūū.
iie baiThnee-kaa kamraa hai,
khirkiōō-see sab din bahot dhuup aatii hai,
aur is liiee is kamree-mēē bahot roośnii hai.*

Aziz: *iee bahot aēēhaa kamraa hai.*

Das: *māi bahot xuś hūū kee aap-koo pasand hai.
iie duusraa khaanee-kaa kamraa hai, aur uupar sab soonee-kee kamree hāī.
kiaa aap uo deekhnāa ēaah*tee hāī?*

Aziz: *māi bahot thakaa hūū, aur aaraam karnāa ēaah*taa hūū.*

Das: *huśiaar rahiiee, us kursii-par mat-baiThiiee.*

Aziz: *kiōō. kiaa uo tuutii hai?*

Das: *jii hāā hamaarii sab kursiiā bahot puraaniī hāī;
ham-koo naiī kursii-kii zaruurat hai.*

Aziz: *too māi meez-par baiThhūū.*

Record 20B, beginning.

3. Preparing to write a letter.

Jim: *māi apniī biuii-koo xat bheejnaa ēaah*taa hūū.
kiaa aap-kee paas kuḥ kaagaz hai?*

Ram Lal: *meeraa xiaal hai kee meez-par kuḥ kaagaz hai.*

Jim: *meherbaanii.
phir mujh-koo bataaiiee, pinsil kahāā miltii hai?
pinsil-kee bagair māi xat nahīī likh saktaa.*

Ram Lal: *aap meerii pinsil-see likh saktee hāī,
kiaa māi aap-kee liiee kuḥ aur kar saktaa hūū?*

Jim: *jii hāā. mujh-koo kahiiee kee aaj kaun din hai.*

Ram Lal: *māī nahīī jaantaa.
axbaar-mēē deekhiiee.*

Record 20B, after 1st spiral.

4. Newspapers.

Jim: *axbaar kab miltaa hai.*

Das: *rooz aaTh bajee.*

Jim: *too xariidnee-kee liiee baahar sarak-par jaanaa
ēaahiiee?*

Das: *jii nahīī. hamaaree ghar-mēē bheejtee hāī.*

Jim: *kiaa aap axbaar pasand kartee hāī?*

Das: *māī janaab?
jii nahīī. māī too likh parh nahīī saktaa.
kiaa aap ēaah'tee hāī?*

Jim: *jii nahīī meherbaanii. māī baad-mēē xariidūū-gaa.*

Record 20B, after 2nd spiral.

5. Book Shop.

Ram Lal: *salaam.*

Jim: *salaam. mujh-koo kuḥ kitaabēē ēaahiiee.*

Ram Lal: *kis kisim-kii janaab,
meeree paas sab zabaanōō-kii kitaabēē hāī.*

Jim: *kuḥ hindustaanii kitaabēē hāī?*

Ram Lal: *zaruur janaab. uo sab duusrii meez-par hāī.
kiaa aap hindustaanii parh'tee hāī?*

Jim: *hindustaanii parhnaa siikh rahaa hūū.
aur kuḥ aasaan kitaabēē, axbaar uagairaa
uagairaa.*

Ram Lal: *hindustaanii-mēē baatēit karnaa too aap
aḍḥii taraa jaantee hāī janaab,*

Jim: *bahot meherbaanii janaab.
meeree ustaad bahot aḍḥee thee.*

Ram Lal: *ṣaaed iee kitaab aap-kee liiee aḍḥii hoo.*

Jim: *kis ēiiz-kii baabat hai.*

Ram Lal: *iee mazeedaar kitaab, safar-kii baabat hai.
aap hindustaan-kii baabat us-mēē, sab parhēē-
gee.*

Jim: *muṣkil too nahīī?*

Ram Lal: *meeraa xiaal nahīī, thoorii kooṣiṣ kiijiiee;*

Jim: *salaam.*

Ram Lal: *salaam.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations

somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. You take your little sister, Fatima, to a store. Explain to the shopkeeper that she has never been in school, that she will go to school next week, and ask him what he thinks she'll need. The shopkeeper will try to sell you as many things as he can. Be sure to bargain for every article he tries to sell you.
2. As well as you can with your present vocabulary describe the room in which you are now sitting. Mention the people in it as well as the furniture.
3. You and your friend decide to converse about India. Ask each other questions: how far it is from here, how long it takes to get there. Talk about the climate, the people, the cities, rivers, and anything else that occurs to you.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

<i>andheeraa</i> <i>axbaar</i>	<i>a</i>	dark, darkness
		newspaper
<i>-ii baabat</i> <i>baat'iiit (-ii)</i>	<i>b</i>	about . . .
		conversation

<i>baithnaa</i> <i>battii (-ii)</i> <i>bijlii (-ii)</i> <i>bijlii-kii battii</i>	to sit down wick lightning (lit. 'lightning wick') the electric light
<i>εup</i> <i>εup rahoo</i>	<i>ε</i> quiet be quiet!

<i>dam</i> <i>eeek dam</i>	<i>d</i>	breath at once, suddenly, altogether	<i>meez (-ii)</i>	<i>m</i>	table
<i>darjaa</i>		class, grade, story of a hou +	<i>paRhaanaa</i> <i>pinsil (-ii)</i>	<i>p</i>	to teach pencil
<i>galtii (-ii)</i>	<i>g</i>	the mistake, error	<i>rakh deenaa</i> <i>rooṣṇii (-ii)</i>	<i>r</i>	to put down light
<i>har</i> <i>huṣiaar</i>	<i>h</i>	each, every attentive, clever, careful	<i>sauaal</i> <i>siikhnaa</i> <i>sikhuaanaa</i>	<i>s</i>	question to learn teach
<i>iskuuḷ</i>	<i>i</i>	school	<i>ṣoor</i>	<i>ṣ</i>	noise
<i>jab</i> <i>jauaab</i>	<i>j</i>	when (except in questions) the answer	<i>taalib-ilm</i>	<i>t</i>	student
<i>kaagaz</i> <i>khirkii (-ii)</i> <i>kilaas</i> <i>kitaab (-ii)</i> <i>-kii kooṣiṣ karnaa</i> <i>kursii (-ii)</i>	<i>k</i>	paper window class book to try chair	<i>Tuutaa</i> <i>ustaad</i> <i>xabar (-ii)</i> <i>xat</i>	<i>r</i>	broken
<i>likhnaa</i>	<i>l</i>	to write	<i>zabaan (-ii)</i> <i>zaruurat (-ii)</i>	<i>u</i>	teacher
				<i>x</i>	news letter
				<i>z</i>	language necessity, need

TRAVEL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 21A, beginning.

John tells Paul his plans for a vacation trip.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

Paul:

you
vacation

When will you get your vacation?

John:

I'll get leave next week.

Paul:

What will you do then?

John:

I want to travel.

easy

But traveling is not easy these days.

AIDS TO LISTENING

tum,
ʃhuttii,
tum-koo kab ʃhuttii milee-gii.

duusree haftee-mēē mujh-koo ʃhuttii milee-gii.

too tum kiaa karoo-gee.

*māi safar karnaa ʃaah*taa hūū.*

aasaan.
leekin in dinōō, safar karnaa aasaan nahīī.

war
ship
dangerous
Because of the war it's very dangerous to go by
ship.

Paul:
to some people
the airplane
Some people like airplanes best.
Why don't you travel by airplane?

John:
Because it costs too much money.
year
railroad
I think (that) this year I'll just travel by train.

Paul:
Do you know where you'll go?

John:
the mountain
Maybe I'll go to the mountain[s].
the place
I know a very beautiful place there.

Paul:
to enjoy one's self
I hope (that) you'll have a good time.

laRaaii.
jahaaz.
xatarnaak.
laRaaii-kii uajee-see, jahaaz-see jaanaa bahot xatarnaak hai.

kisii-koo,
hauaaii jahaaz,
kisii-koo hauaaii jahaaz, sab-see ziaadaa pasand hai.
tum hauaaii jahaaz-see kiõõ nahii safar karoo,

kiõõ-kee bahot paisaa lagtaa hai.
saal.
reel.
meeraa xiaal hai, kee is saal-mēē, sirf reel-gaarīi-see safar
karūū-gaa.

kiaa tum jaantee hoo, kee tum kahūū jaao-gee?

pahaar,
šaaed mīī pahaar-koo jaaūū-gaa.
jaḡaa.
uahūū mīī eek bahot xuubsuurat jaḡaa jaantaa hūū.

mazaa karnaa.
mujh-koo ummiid hai kee tum mazaa karoo-gee.

At the station. John talks to the ticket agent.

John:
the ticket seller
Are you the ticket seller?

*Tikiṛ baabuu,
kiaa tum Tikiṛ baabuu hoo?*

Aziz:
Yes, sir.

jii hāḍ janaab.

Record 21B, beginning.

What can I do for you?

māṭ aap-kee liiee kiaa kar saktaa hūū.

John:
Simlaa
How much is a ticket to Simlaa?

*šimlaa.
šimlee-kaa kitnaa Tikiṛ hai.*

Aziz:
What kind of a ticket?
Just one-way or round-trip?

*kis kisim-kaa.
sirf jaanee-kaa? iaa jaanee aanee-kaa.*

John:
There's nothing definite about coming [back].
Just give me a one-way ticket.

*aaṇee-kaa kuḥ Thiik nahīī.
mujh-koo sirf jaanee-kaa Tikiṛ diijiiee.*

Aziz:
(In) which class will you travel?

aap kis darjee-mēē jaaēē-gee.

John:
third
(In the) third class.

*tiisraa.
tiisree darjee-mēē.*

to arrive
Can you tell me when this train will get to
Simla?

Aziz:
I think the train'll be a little late.
But you'll surely be in Simlaa before night.

John:
the suitcase
the coat
to leave
Can I leave my suitcase and my coat here?

Aziz:
Certainly, sir.
the property
the office
Put your things in the office.
please
the clerk
brown
But please be careful and tell the clerk that the
brown coat is yours.
stupid
the color
You see he's a very stupid man and might give
you a coat of another color.

ṡahōṡnaa.
kiaa tum mujh-koo bataa saktee hoo kee ice gaarii kab ṡimlee-
mēṡ ṡāh'ṡee-gii?

meeraa xiaal hai kee gaarii-koo kuṡh deer hoo-gii.
leekin aṡ zaruur, raat hoonee-kee ṡah'lee, ṡimlee-mēṡ hōṡ-gee.

bakas.
koot.
ṡhoorna.
kiaa māi aṡnaa bakas, aur aṡnaa koot iahāṡ ṡhoor saktaa
hūṡ?

xuṡii-see janaab.
saamaan.
daftar.
aṡnaa saamaan daftar-mēṡ rakh diijiiee,
meherbaanii-see,
munṡii.
xaakii.
leekin meherbaanii-see huṡiaar rahiiee, aur munṡii-koo kahiiee,
kee aṡ-kaa koot, xaakii hai.
beeṡkuuf.
rang.
kiṡṡ-kee uoṡ bahot beeṡkuuf aadmii hai, aur aṡ-koo ṡaaed,
duusree rang-kaa koot dee.

Record 22A, beginning.

More Numbers

twenty-one	<i>ikaais.</i>
twenty-two	<i>baais.</i>
twenty-three	<i>teeis.</i>
twenty-four	<i>īaubis.</i>
twenty-five	<i>paīiis.</i>
twenty-six	<i>īhabbis.</i>
twenty-seven	<i>sattaais.</i>
twenty-eight	<i>aThaais.</i>
twenty-nine	<i>untis.</i>
thirty	<i>tiis.</i>

After going through the *Basic Sentences* individually,

2. Check Your Pronunciation

1. From now on there will be no practices on particular points of pronunciation. You must however always be sure

to distinguish between all the vowels,
to pronounce long consonants long,

to pronounce the *h* where it belongs, and to avoid any puff of breath where it doesn't,
to distinguish between front *t*, *d* and back *ṭ*, *ḍ*,
and between *ṛ* and *ṛ*,
to distinguish *h* from *x*,
not to overstress certain syllables and slur others,
and in general to go out of your way to imitate the records or your Guide as closely as you can.

2. Whenever your Guide pronounces a word in a way which is different from the one suggested in our *Aids to Listening*, follow him. Although local and individual speech differences among Hindustani speakers are not too great, they do exist. Thus, you may hear *sigraiṭ* or *sigreet* instead of *sigret*, *moaaf* instead of *maaf*, *Thahernaa* and *Thah'riiee* instead of *Thairnaa* and *Thairiiee*, *soolah'* instead of *soolaa*, *untiis* instead of *untis* (and other similar variations in the numbers), *umr* instead of *umar*. The speaker on the record himself varies between *uajaa-see* and *uajee-see*, *xubsuurat* and *xuub-suurat*, *rupiaa* and *rupaiaa*, *bimaar* and *biimaar*. Note that these are exceptional cases. In the vast majority of words no such variations are allowed.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. "YOU", LESS POLITE.

The word with which to address one person or several persons politely is, of course, *aap* 'you'. In a sentence it is a plural, that is, it goes with plural verbs such as *booltee hāī*, *karēē* (-gee, -gii), *thee*, *thīī*. Now note the following examples:

1. tum *kiaa* *karoo-gee* 'what will you do?'
 tum *kiōō nahīī safar* *karoo* 'why should you not travel?'
kiaa tum *jaantee hoo kee* (tum) *kahāū jaaoo-gee?* 'do you know where you will go?'
 tum *bahot mazaa* *karoo-gee* 'you will enjoy it very much'
 tum *TikiT baabuu* hoo 'you are the ticket agent'
 tum *bataa saktee* hoo 'you can tell me'
2. tum-*koo kab* *chutTii milee-gii* 'when will there be available leave TO YOU; when will you get a furlough?'

1. A less polite, or more intimate, expression for 'you' (one or several persons) is *tum*. The verb 'to be' and the subjunctives have a special *tum*-form in -oo:

(*tum*) hoo 'you are'
kiaa (*tum*) *jaaoo?* 'should you go'
(*tum*) *kiaa karoo* 'what should you do'

You see that this subjunctive form is identical with the not-so-polite command *karoo* 'do!', *booloo* 'speak!'

As far as number and case endings are concerned, the *tum*-forms are masculine or feminine PLURALS (endings -ee, -ii):

(*tum*) *jaantee* (or *jaantii*) hoo 'you know'
(*tum*) *karoo-gee* 'you will do'
(*tum*) *jaaoo-gii* 'you (women) will go'
tum aīēhee hoo 'you are well'
tum kaisee hoo 'how are you?'

2. Before particles, *tum*- has no special form (just like *ham*- 'us'): *tum-koo* 'to you', *tum-par* 'upon you'.

tum- (again just like *ham*-) cannot, however, be combined with -*kaa* (-ee, -ii). The expression for 'your(s)' is *tumhaaraa* (note the difference in sound between *hamaaraa* 'our' and *tumhaaraa* 'your'): *tumhaaree saamaan-koo* 'to your baggage'; *tumhaaree paas . . . hai* 'you have . . .'; *tumhaarii taraa* 'like you'.

3. You may find it helpful to have certain of the verb forms combined in a chart:

'speak(s)'	'may (shall, will) speak'
<i>maī booltaa hūū</i>	<i>boolūū(-gaa)</i>
<i>maī booltii hūū</i>	<i>boolūū(-gii)</i>
<i>aadmii booltaa hai</i>	<i>boolēē(-gaa)</i>
<i>aurat booltii hai</i>	<i>boolēē(-gii)</i>
<i>loog, aap, ham booltee hāī</i>	<i>boolēē(-gee)</i>
<i>aurtēē, aap, ham booltii hāī</i>	<i>boolēē(-gii)</i>
<i>tum booltee hoo</i>	<i>booloo(-gee)</i>
<i>tum booltii hoo</i>	<i>booloo(-gii)</i>

4. Note: (1) *aap* is not infrequently used with the *tum*-forms of the verb: *aap kaisee hoo* 'how are you?'; *aap mazaa karoo-gee* 'you will enjoy it'.

(2) In the masculine past tense form, *tum*, being a plural, goes with *thee*:

<i>tum kaisee thee</i>	'how were you?'
<i>tum iahāā thee</i>	'you were here'.

However, in addressing women, most speakers use *thii* rather than *thīi* with *tum*. Compare:

ham, aap ačchee thee; ham, aap ačchii thīi 'we, you, are well'
tum ačchee thee, tum ačchii thii 'you are well'

B. SUBJUNCTIVE AND FUTURE OF THE VERB "TO BE".

gaarīi-koo deer hoo-gii 'to the train there will be a delay' 'the train will be late'

aap šimlee-mēē hōō-gee 'You will be in Simla'

The subjunctive and future of the verb 'to be' is *maī hūū(-gaa, -gii)* 'I may (shall) be'; *aadmīi, aurat, uoō hoo(-gaa, -gii)* 'he, she . . . may (will) be' *loog, ham, aap hōō(-gee, -gii)* 'they, we, you . . . may (will) be' *tum hoo(-gee, -gii)* 'you may (will) be'.

C. LOSS OF SHORT VOWEL BEFORE CONSONANT PLUS VOWEL.

gaarīi pahōētīi hai 'the train arrives'
gaarīi pāh'ēē-gii 'the train will arrive'

Verb stems, just as nouns, may end in the sequence: vowel plus consonant plus vowel plus consonant (. . . VCVC). Before an ending which starts with a vowel, the sequence is transformed into (. . . VCC-) (See Unit 7, Comment A; Unit 8, Comment A.) Compare: *samajhtīi hai* 'she understands'

samjhee-gii 'she will understand'
samjhūū-gaa 'I shall understand'

pahōēnaa is treated the same way; but the *ō*, instead of being dropped completely, blends into the *h*: *h'* (cf. *bahē* 'sister' vs. *bah'nēē* 'sisters'), and the whole syllable is actually pronounced through the nose: -āh'ē- :

pahōētee hāī 'they arrive'
pāh'ēēē-gee 'they will arrive'

D. KISII.

kisii-koo hauaaii jahaaz 'to some(body) an air-plane is pleasant,
pasand hai some like an airplane'

The oblique case of *kučh* and *kooīi* is *kisii*:

kisii-kii baabat 'about somebody,
something'
kisii īizōō-see 'from some things'
kisii taraf 'in any direction'

E. OBLIQUES WITHOUT PARTICLES.

in dinōō '(in) these days'
is saal '(in) this year'
duusree haftee '(in the) next week'

In a large number of more or less set phrases the oblique case is used WITHOUT a particle following. Such phrases are chiefly indications of time, place, or manner. Here are a few other examples:

<i>ghar jaanaa</i>	'to go home'
<i>duusree mahiinee</i>	'(in the) next month'
<i>us jagaa</i>	'(in) that place, there'

Note that one says *is saal* 'this year', but always *is mangal-koo* (with a particle) 'this Tuesday'

It is easy to see that *liiee*, *paas*, *saath*, *pah'lee*, *baad* (masculines), *taraf*, *taraa*, *baabat* (feminines) are really oblique nouns of the type described. Compare:

<i>is jagaa</i>	'(in this) place'
<i>is taraa</i>	'in this fashion'
<i>is saal</i>	'(in) this year'
<i>is liiee</i>	'(for) this sake, therefore'

Also contrast:

<i>iee jagaa a'ehii hai</i>	'this place is good'
<i>is jagaa kuch paanii nahī</i>	'(in) this place there is no water'
<i>uoo saal garam thaa</i>	'that year was warm'
<i>us saal garmii bahot thii</i>	'(in) that year there was much heat'

F. "WHEN, WHERE."

1. *kiaa tum mujh-koo bataa saktee hoo kee iee gaarii kab simlee-mee pāh'ēee-gii?* 'can you tell me when this train will get to Simla?'

jab uoo bahot šoor kartee hāi 'when they make too much noise, then . . .'

The English 'when' is rendered either by *jab* or by *kab*. *kab* is used in questions, either direct (*gaarii kab jaatii hai* 'When does the train leave?') or reported (*bataaiie kee gaarii kab jaatii hai* 'tell me at what time the train leaves' or *mujh-koo maalum nahī kee gaarii kab pāh'ēee-gii* 'I don't know when the train will get in'). The *kee* in the reported questions may, of course, be omitted. Remember that *kab* in a sentence is always strongly stressed. *jab*, on the other hand, serves to correlate two events in time; it really means 'when . . . , then . . .'. The equivalent of 'then', in this case, is often *too*, e.g. *jab šoor kartee hai, too un-koo kah'taa hūū* 'when they are noisy, (then) I tell them'.

2. *kiaa tum jaanteee hoo kee tum kahāa jaaoo-gee* 'do you know where you'll go?'

In this example you find the question word *kahāa* 'where' in a reported question rather than in a direct one. It is used in exactly the same way as is *kab* in the examples cited above.

G. MORE ABOUT SUBJUNCTIVE AND FUTURE.

1. *aaoo čalēē* 'let's go'
phir čalēē 'let's go'
šaaed šaadii karce 'she may marry'
too naatak iaa sinamaa deekhēē 'why not go see a theater or movie'

These examples show that the subjunctive is used in a great variety of situations, with a great variety of English equivalents. Here are a few pointers: *šaaed* 'perhaps, probably' is regularly used with a subjunctive (but also with the future: *šaaed rahūū-gaa* 'maybe I'll stay'). The plural form in *-ēē* with or without preceding *aaoo* 'come on' corresponds to our 'let's . . . ' or 'why not . . . '. Incidentally, the same plural form referring to *aap* (which may or may not be explicitly stated in the sentence) is used in polite suggestions; with question tone ("?"): (*aap-loog*) *andar aae?* 'would you care to come in, would you people mind walking in?'. In addition to this, remember the old examples where the subjunctive is used in doubtful questions such as *kab aaūū* 'when should I come?'.
 2. The future (that is, the subjunctive followed by *-gaa*, *-gee* or *-giī*) is used much more widely and consistently than any of its so-called English counterparts. Where the Hindustani speaker says *ham-loog iahāā*

rahēē-gee, an American might say (according to the situation) 'we shall stay, we'll stay, we are going to stay, we'll be staying, we are staying . . . here'. Also, in questions such as *kučh duudh piēē-gee?* 'will you have some milk, would you like (to have) some milk?', Hindustani uses the future. Keep these things in mind for conversation practice!

2. Covering English and Hindustani of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Hindustani, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Hindustani. Check up on

anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Here are some more sentences with blanks for you to fill in:

1. When will he get leave?
us-koo kab ----- milee-gii.
2. When will he get an umbrella?
us-koo kab ----- milee-gii.
3. She wants to go outside
uoo ----- jaanaa ěaah'tii hai.
4. She wants to go to the mountains
uoo ----- - --- jaanaa ěaah'tii hai.
5. Does it ever rain here?
kiaa iahāā ----- paanii girtaa hai?
6. When does it rain here?
iahāā ----- paanii girtaa hai.
7. When it rains here, traveling becomes very difficult.
----- iahāā paanii girtaa hai, safar karnaa bahot muškil hai.
8. Where do you live?
tum kahāā -----.
9. Are you a servant?
kiaa tum naukar -----?
10. Where will you stay tomorrow?
kal tum kahāā -----.

11. In which ship will he go?
----- jahaaz-mēē jaaee-gaa.
12. He will go to some place
----- jagaa-koo jaaee-gaa.

Read aloud the following and pick out the expressions you think most suitable.

13. Traveling is very dangerous.
 - a. *safar karnaa bahot aasaan hai.*
 - b. *safar karnaa bahot xatarnaak hai.*
 - c. *safar karnaa bahot muškil hai.*
14. He goes third class
 - a. *uoo pah'lee darjee-mēē jaataa hai.*
 - b. *uoo duusree darjee-mēē jaataa hai.*
 - c. *uoo tiisree darjee-mēē jaataa hai.*
15. A clerk works in an office
 - a. *munšii daftar-mēē kaam kartaa hai.*
 - b. *munšii kaarxaanee-mēē kaam kartaa hai.*
 - c. *munšii bahot becoḡunf aadmii hai.*

Read aloud the following questions and be ready to speak out the answer to each one. Make your answer brief and to the point.

16. *aap-kii umr kiaa hai.*
17. *aap-koo kab ěhuTTii milee-gii.*
18. *kiaa safar karnaa aap-koo pasand hai?*

19. *laRaaii-kee baad aap kiaa karēē-gee.*

20. *kiaa aap-kaa xiaal hai kee kal baariš hoo-gii?*

21. *aap-kaa koot kis rang-kaa hai.*

22. *kiaa aap kabhiī pahaar-mēē thee?*

23. *is imaat-mēē kitnee darjee hāī.*

24. *kiaa aap-koo jahaaz-see, reel gaarii ziaadaa pasand hai?*

25. *kisii-koo kuḥ sauāal puuḥhiiee.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Hindustani for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Hindustani for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Hindustani immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by

asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 22A, after 1st spiral.

1. In a hotel.

Jim: *kiaa tum munšii hoo?*

Das: *jii hāā janaab.
māī aap-kee liiee kiaa kar saktaa hūū.*

Jim: *meeraa naam Brown hai.
kiaa meeraa kamraa taiiaar hai?*

Das: *thookii deer Thairiiee janaab.
māī kitaab-mēē deekhtaa hūū.*

Jim: *aḥḥaa.*

Das: *mujh-koo afsoos hai. leekin aap-kee kamree-mēē,
abhii-tak kooī loog rah'tee hāī.*

Jim: *kiaa tum mujh-koo duusraa kamraa dee saktee hoo?*
safar-kii uajaa-see māt bahot thakaa hūū, aur
aaraam karnaa ṛauhṛta hūū.

Das: *māt aap-koo duusraa kamraa nahīī dee saktaa.*
laRaaii-kii uajee-see, bahot sipaahīī loog is
hooṛal-mēē rahṛtee hāī.
aur hamaaree paas kuḥ jagaa nahīī.

Jim: *too māt kiaa karūū.*
aap-kaa xiaal hai kee iee loog raat-kee pahṛlee
jaaēē-gee?

Das: *zaruur janaab.*
un-kii gaarii cek ghanṛee-mēē jaaee-gii.

[Jim]¹: *too māt pahṛlee khaanaa khaaūū-gaa.*
kiḍḍ-kee māt bahot bhuukaa hūū.²
kiaa māt aṛnaa saamaan iahāa choor saktaa hūū?

Das: *zaruur janaab.*
māt uoḍ daftar-mēē rakh dūū-gaa.

Jim: *aḥḥaa.*
māt cek ghanṛee-mēē uaapas aaūū-gaa.

Record 22A, after 2nd spiral.

2. One hour later.

Jim: *kiaa meeraa kamraa taiiaar hai?*

Das: *thoorii deer Thairiīee janaab.*
naukar aap-kaa kamraa abhīī-tak saaf kar rahaa
hai.
leekin das minat-mēē taiiaar hoo-gaa.

¹ Not on record.

² The record has “,” by mistake.

Jim: *too māt iahāa baiṛhūū-gaa?*
mujh-koo balaaoo kee meeraa kamraa kis darjee-mēē
hai.

Das: *aap-kaa kamraa tiisree darjee-mēē hai.*

Jim: *kiaa sarak-par?*

Das: *jii hāa janaab. aap khiṛkii-see, bazaar deekh saktee*
hāī.
leekin meeraa xiaal hai kee aap-kaa kamraa, ab
taiiaar hai.
māt aap-koo dikhaaūū-gaa.
naukar aap-kaa saamaan laaee-gaa.

Jim: *kiaa hooṛal-mēē lift hai?*

Das: *jii nahīī janaab.*
ham-koo paidal jaanaa ṛaahiīee.

Record 22B, beginning.

3. Getting on the train.

Husein: *aap kahāa jaaēē-gee janaab;*

Jim: *bambaii.*

Husein: *īee too bambaii-kii gaarii nahīī.*
jaldii-see niīṛee jaaīee.

Jim: *bahot meherbaanii.*

Husein: *jaldii kiījiīee janaab;*
īee naagpuur-kee gaarii hai, cek minat-mēē
jaaee-gii.

Jim: bahot šukriiaa.
leekin māi pah'lee naagpuur, aur uahāā-see
bambaii jaaūū -gaa.

Husein: ıee duusrii baat hai.
maaf kiijiıee.
ıoo ıee aap-kaa saamaan hai?

Jim: jii hāā. ıee bakas aur ıhatriiāā.

Husein: kahāā rakh dūū.

Jim: kuḥh baat nahīi. bahot meherbaanii,
aap kahāā jaa rahee hāi.

Husein: māi naagpuur-lak ıs gaarii-mēē jaataa hūū,
aur phir mootar-see pahaar-koo jaaūū-gaa.

Jim: kīaa aap sirf tamaaśee, aur mazee-kee liıee jaa
rahee hāi?

Husein: jii hāā. kaam aur mazee-kee liıee. doonōō.

Jim: ıs gaarii-koo, duusrii gaariiōō-see, ziaadaa uakṭ
lagtaa hai?

Husein: jii nahīi.
laraaii-kii uajee-see, sab gaariiōō-koo, pah'lee-
see, ab ziaadaa uakṭ lagtaa hai.

Record 22B, after 1st spiral.

4. Checking baggage.

Jim: ıee doo bakas kalkattee bheejnaa ṣaah'taa hūū.

baabuu: kīaa aap-kee paas TikiT hai?

Jim: kis kisim-kaa TikiT,

baabuu: reel gaarii-kaa.

Jim: kīaa TikiT pah'lee leenaa ṣaahiıee?

baabuu: jii hāā janaab,
TikiT baabuu-kaa daftar, ısteešan-kii, duusru
taraf hai.

Jim: aur us-kee baad iahāā uaapas aaūū?

baabuu: jii hāā. bakas iahāā rakh du.

Jim: kalkattee-kaa kitnaa TikiT hai.

TikiT baabuu: kalkattee-kaa TikiT soolaa rupae hai.
leekin duusrii gaarii-kaa, thoora kam
hai.

Jim: ıee too bahot aṣṣhii baat hai.

TikiT baabuu: aap-kii xuṣii,²

Jim: leekin duusrii gaarii kis uakṭ jaaee-gıı.

TikiT baabuu: aath bajee-see pah'lee nahīi janaab.

Jim: afsoos-kii baai.
ıee too bahot deer hai.

TikiT baabuu: māi kuḥh nahīi kar saktaa.

Jim: too ıs gaarii-kaa TikiT, jaldii diijiıee.

¹ 'I've put it here'.

² 'As you please'.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Hindustani in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Hindustani of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Hindustani equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Hindustani expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. You invite your friend to spend his vacation with you in the country, where you have a house. Tell him about the place where you live, about your friends there, etc. Make sure that he knows exactly how to get to your place.
2. Ask one of your friends about his plans for after the war: the work he wants to do, whether he is going to get married, etc.
3. Discuss what you are going to do in your next vacation—be specific.
4. Do some simple arithmetic involving addition of numbers adding up to less than thirty.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

<i>aasaan</i>	<i>a</i>	easy	<i>bakas</i>	suitcase
<i>aThaa'is</i>		twenty-eight	<i>beeokhuuf</i>	stupid
<i>baabuu</i>	<i>b</i>	employee	<i>ḡaubiiis</i>	twenty-four
<i>ṭikiṭ baabuu</i>		ticket seller	<i>ḡhabbiis</i>	twenty-six
<i>baa'is</i>		twenty-two	<i>ḡhooKnaa</i>	to leave
			<i>ḡhuṭṭii (-ii)</i>	vacation, leave

<i>daftar</i>	<i>d</i>	office	<i>rang</i>	<i>r</i>	the color
<i>hauaañi</i>	<i>h</i>	pertaining to air	<i>reel (-ii)</i>		railroad
<i>hauaañi jahaaz</i>		the airplane		<i>s</i>	the year
<i>ikaais</i>	<i>i</i>	twenty-one	<i>saal</i>		property, goods,
			<i>saamaan</i>		things
<i>jagaa (-ii)</i>	<i>j</i>	place, the spot	<i>sattaais</i>		twenty-seven
<i>jahaaz</i>		ship		<i>š</i>	Simla (a city)
<i>kisii-</i>	<i>k</i>	see <i>Word Study</i>	<i>šimlaa</i>		
	<i>l</i>	war	<i>teeis</i>	<i>t</i>	twenty-three
<i>laRaaii (-ii)</i>			<i>tiis</i>		thirty
	<i>m</i>	taste, pleasure	<i>tiisraa</i>		third
<i>mazaa</i>		to have a good time, to	<i>tum</i>		you
<i>mazaa karnaa</i>		enjoy one's self		<i>T</i>	ticket, stamp
<i>meherbaanii (-ii)</i>		kindness	<i>TikiT (-ii)</i>		
<i>meherbaanii-see</i>		please		<i>u</i>	twenty-nine
<i>munšii</i>		clerk	<i>untiis</i>		
	<i>p</i>	twenty-five		<i>x</i>	brown
<i>pač'iis</i>		mountain	<i>xaakii</i>		dangerous
<i>pahaak</i>		to arrive	<i>xatarnaak</i>		
<i>pahōč'naa</i>					

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HINDUSTANI?

This section is a true-false quiz exactly like the one in Unit 6, except that the first item is not a practice item. Prepare paper with numbers from 1 to 40 and mark the statements that you will hear from your Guide or the phonograph record either *T* or *F*. After you finish the quiz, the Leader will read out the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and

give your score to your Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Hindustani for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I.

1. The show was all right.
2. Shall I come with you?
3. Where were you last night?
4. How many sisters do you have?
5. The music was interesting.
6. She was sick.
7. The movie is going to start soon.
8. Please get a haircut after dinner.

9. Before going to the show, he was at our house.
10. The girls were in town.

II.

1. I am going to stay at my mother's house.
2. I hope they are well (speaking of somebody's parents).
3. I hope they are well. (Speaking of somebody's sisters.)
4. Please show me the new factories.
5. How many sisters did he have?
6. How old is your father?

7. When will he get married?
8. You (addressing a lady) will be busy? That's too bad.
9. Please wash his clothes.
10. These people have to sleep.

III.

1. Which way (direction) is the factory?
2. Give me my umbrella.
3. Please give me your umbrella.
4. Where should I get a car?
5. I'll wait until the fog lifts (is over).
6. Please stay until the summer is over.
7. It isn't raining now; but it is going to rain tomorrow.
8. The clothes are dirty.
9. Around here (in this direction) there is plenty of sunshine in the summer.
10. What kind of entertainment do you like best?

IV

1. We have no teacher.
2. Do you teach languages every day?

3. Please be quiet.
4. Please tell him to be quiet.
5. Don't sit down on the table.
6. The teacher is going to tell him to study more.
7. You make a lot of mistakes.
8. They don't need these chairs and tables.
9. Those chairs are broken.
10. Is she good at that work?

V.

1. I won't get any vacation this year.
2. Traveling is expensive and dangerous.
3. I think there is no danger involved (in it).
4. It doesn't take more than eighteen rupees to go there.
5. Enjoy yourself!
6. What kind of ticket do you want to buy?
7. I want one round-trip ticket and two one-way tickets.
8. Don't leave your suitcase outside of the station.
9. Don't put it over there, either.
10. The clerk may give you other people's coats because he is stupid.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: *hindustaanii-mēē*
 . . . -koo kīaa kah'tee hāī'.

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Hindustani for each of the following sentences:

I.

1. Wait until the movie begins.
2. Don't ask me about this.
3. I need a haircut; where should I go?
4. Do you have to buy anything?
5. Do you have any brothers or sisters?
6. Do you have any money?
7. Please bring your elder brother's son with you.
8. Will your mother come with you?
9. I'll go to town with your brother.
10. Were you here with your brother?

II.

1. They are just showing the new house to their friends.
2. She does nothing for her friends.
3. The new servant does all the housework.
4. Don't wash my clothes; I'll wash them tomorrow.
5. She was thirsty but not hungry.
6. Take a rest (rest somewhat), and afterwards try to study.
7. Don't go to school without eating a meal.
8. Tell the servants to make the dinner ready.

9. Will you have some salt?
10. Your father wasn't sleeping when we were at your house.

III.

1. The weather isn't always like this.
2. I have no raincoat.
3. Have you got my umbrella, or yours?
4. The sky is clear.
5. There are no clouds in (on) the sky.
6. Sometimes there's no sunshine at all in the winter.
7. Where can I get an umbrella?
8. The wind is stronger today than yesterday.
9. You can't go out without your umbrella.
10. On account of the snow, it's dangerous to walk on the road.

IV.

1. Are you going to study Hindustani before going to India?
2. Do you need any books?
3. I'll give you my books, and you (please) give me your friends' (books).
4. Try to speak Hindustani.
5. (Give an) answer (of) my question before you ask your(s).

6. Is there any news in the newspaper this morning?
7. You aren't going to get any letters tomorrow.
8. I don't need electric lights in this house.
9. Put down the paper!
10. Weren't you ever in America?

V.

1. Some people get sick from riding in an airplane.
2. I am going to live at a new place this summer.

3. It takes money to enjoy one's self.
4. Ask the clerk how much the ticket costs.
5. Have you got a first-class ticket to Calcutta?
6. Traveling is difficult on account of the war.
7. After the war, traveling by airplane won't cost much.
8. These trains are always late.
9. Before taking [your] trip, check (send) your baggage.
10. We go to our place in the mountains every year.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. The Leader will ask everybody to take turns in speaking sentences by saying:

"hindustaani-mēē . . . -koo kīaa kah'tee hāī." If you have a Guide, he will check on your pronunciation and the correctness of your Hindustani.

SECTION F—LISTENING IN (QUESTIONS)

To the Group Leader: Follow the instructions given in Section F of Unit 6.

Listen to the Guide or phonograph record twice. Be prepared to answer, in complete Hindustani sentences or phrases, the questions listed below on each particular conversation. If you cannot do this without hesitation, you need to review the previous *Listening In's*.

Record 24A, beginning.

1. *"Movies or stage."*
 1. Where is Mr. Das going tonight?
 2. What does Mr. Das tell Jim to do?

3. Does Jim want to go to the same place?
4. What about Jim's likes and dislikes?
5. What is Mr. Das' second suggestion?
6. Why does Mr. Das think it is important to hurry up?
7. Where is Jim going to go?

Record 24A, after 1st spiral.

2. "*Customs inspection.*"

1. Who is Mr. Das?¹
2. Where is Mr. Ram Lal coming from?
3. Where does the conversation take place?
4. What does Mr. Das ask Mr. Ram Lal first?
5. Where is Mr. Ram Lal's home?
6. Where was Mr. Ram Lal half a year ago?
7. How many pieces of baggage does he have?
8. Is he going to stay at home for good now?
9. Does he have to let Mr. Das see all his belongings?
10. What does Mr. Das want to know about Mr. Ram Lal's baggage?
11. What does Mr. Ram Lal say he has in his suitcases?
12. How many suitcases is Mr. Ram Lal supposed to open?

¹ The corresponding English word is used in Hindustani.

13. What does Mr. Das pick on?
14. Does Mr. Das find any fault with the baggage?
15. How much does Mr. Ram Lal have to pay?
16. How do you know the raincoat is not in one of the big suitcases?
17. How do you know it was not bought in America?

Record 24A, after 2nd spiral.

3. "*Newspapers.*"¹

1. Does Mr. Das know how to read and write?
2. What is he doing?
3. Where does the conversation take place?
4. How often does the paper come?
5. Why is Mr. Das dissatisfied with the local paper?
6. What is his special interest?
7. Should Jim buy his paper at the stand?
8. How much is a Calcutta paper?
9. What is Jim going to do?

Record 24B, beginning.

4. "*The new house.*"²

1. Is the house ready to live in?

¹ By mistake, the records have *likh---* instead of *path ---* in all four instances.

² *nahaanaa* 'to bathe'.

2. What do you know about the family of the speaker?
3. Does the speaker own the house?
4. Is it a very large building?
5. How many stories does it have?
6. Are the stories of about equal size?
7. How many rooms does it have?
8. Is there a bathroom on every floor?
9. Is it located in the city?
10. Is it necessary to go upstairs or downstairs in order to get from the dining room to the living room?
11. Are the bedrooms and the bathroom on the same floor?

Record 24B, after 1st spiral.

5. "*Das' Sister.*"

1. Is she a younger or older sister?
2. Has she been in good health?
3. Where does she live?
4. Does she live with her parents?
5. Does Jim know about her husband?
6. Does she have a job?
7. What does her husband do for a living?
8. Her husband recently changed his job. Did he change his line of work, too?

9. Why should he want to travel?
10. Has he been outside India?
11. Where would he like to go?
12. Is there a chance that he will, and when?

Record 24B, after 2nd spiral.

6. "*Das and Ram Lal are riding up the elevator. Ram Lal invites Das to look at his new office.*"

1. Have the two gentlemen met before?
2. Who is in the office besides the two gentlemen?
3. Is it a one-room place?
4. Mr. Das says some things about the new office are all right but others aren't. What does he like, and what does he dislike?
5. What does he think is wrong with the windows?
6. Did he know Mr. Ram Lal's old place?
7. Does Mr. Ram Lal deny what Mr. Das says?
8. What does he say used to be wrong with the old office?
9. Does he drive a car?

Record 24B, after 3rd spiral.

7. "*Simla.*"

1. What does the speaker say about the Himalaya mountains?
2. Where is Simla situated?

3. Does the speaker mention any rivers?
4. What is the climate of Simla, in Summer and Winter?
5. At what time of the year are there more people in Simla?
6. Some of the Indian government offices move from Delhi to Simla during the Summer months. Why?
7. Is the weather mostly cloudy in Simla?
8. Has the speaker ever been there?

SECTION G—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations, from one to two minutes each, on as many of the topics which have been developed in Units 1-12 as you can, combining

and varying them as you wish. All members of the group should have a chance to take part.

KEY

This *Key* contains the solutions for the exercises in *Spoken Hindustani*. Remember that the answers in this key are typical ones, but not the only ones. There are always various ways of saying things in any language, and all are correct.

Occasionally, if a Hindustani question in an exercise refers to an individual situation instead of being answerable in general, the *Key* does not give you an answer, but it will show the question in English (between parentheses) so that you are sure you have understood the question.

p. 29

1. a
2. b
3. b
4. b
5. c
6. c
7. a

p. 46

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. c
5. b
6. a
7. c

p. 61

1. b
2. b
3. a
4. c
5. a
6. a
7. c
8. b
9. c
10. a

p. 75

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. b

5. a
6. b
7. c

p. 76

8. deekh
9. jaanaa
10. aanaa čaah*ti
11. bheej

12. kis-
13. kis-
14. aae-gii
15. rahee-gaa

p. 80-1

1. doo aur čaar čhai hāi.
2. amrikaa-mée mandir bahot hāi.
3. meeraa beeTaa meerii biuii-kii bahen hai.
4. kisaan loog bahot kaam nahī kartee.
5. masjid-mée sab loog juutee-kee saath jaatee hāi.

T F F T F

6. sab jahaazii loog dukaan-mēē kaam kartee hāi. F
 7. goōṣṭ dukaan-mēē beeṭtee hāi. T
 8. amriikaa-mēē sab loog saRak-par khaanaa khaatee hāi. F
 9. rooTii piitee hāi. F
 10. garmii-mēē goōṣṭ jaldii xaraab hootaa hai. T
 11. ūūčii imaarat hameeṣaa aspataal hai. F
 12. nadii-mēē paanii hai. T
 13. sab loog hindustaanii boottee hāi. F
 14. *say it*-koo hindustaanii-mēē “kahniice” kahṭee hāi. T
 15. anaar dhoonee-kee liice ačṭhee hāi. F
 16. amriikaa-see hindustaan-koo gaaRii nahii jaa saktee. T
 17. takliif xaraab, aur xuṣii ačṭhii hai. T
 18. sab loog rooz-rooz duudh-see dhootee hāi. F
 19. ghar-mēē Chat hameeṣaa uupar hai. T
 20. puraanii imaarat hameeṣaa bahot baRii hai. F
 21. khaanaa xariidnee-kee liice kuṅh paisaa nahii lagtaa. F
 22. sipaahii fauj-mēē hai. T
 23. meereee baap-kee baal-bačṭee nahii. F
 24. eek haftee-mēē tiin mangal hāi. F
 25. dukandaar loog hameeṣaa kaalij-mēē paRhṭee hāi. F
 26. paidal jaanee-kee liice juutaa utaarna Thiiḱ hai. F
 27. hindustaan amriikaa-mēē nahii. T
 28. tarbuuz phal hai. T
 29. laRkee hameeṣaa paRhnaa pasand kartee hāi. F
 30. hooTal-mee hameeṣaa paaxaanaa hai. T
 31. jahaazii loog Ṣaaual nahii khaa saktee. F
 32. puraanii rooTii bahot taazii hai. F
 33. eek nadii-kee doo kinaaree hāi. T
 34. hindustaanii-mēē *Monday*-koo “ituaar” kahṭee hāi. F
 35. nadii-kee paanii-par paidal nahii Ṣal saktee. T
 36. lifT uupar niṭṭee jaatii hāi. T
 37. gaaḍḍ-mēē sab ghar ūūṭṭee hāi. F
 38. baaraa anDee eek darjan hai. T
 39. aspataal biimaar loogḍḍ-kee liice hai. T
 40. bhuukaa hoona bahot ačṭṭhaa hai. F

(18 T; 22 F)

p. 81: I

1. salaam janaab. aap kaisee hāi.
2. meherbaanii. māi bahot ačṭṭhaa huū.

3. mǎi nahī samajhtaa.
4. dhiiree booliice.
5. maaf kiijīee, isTeeśan kahāā hai.
6. baaī taraf jaaīīee, aur phir baaī taraf.

p. 82

7. hooTal siidhee hai.
8. mai sigreT čaah*taa hūū.
9. kiaa aap kučh khaanaa čaah*tee hāī ?
10. us-kaa daam kiaa hai.

p. 82: II

1. aap kahāā-see hāī.
2. kiaa aap amriikaa pasand kartee hāī ?
3. us-kaa kiaa naam hai.
4. uo hindustaanī samajhtaa hai.
5. kiaa aap kal aa saktee hāī ?
6. mai kab aaūū.
7. janaab, iahāā Thairīīee.
8. saahēb-koo thooRaa kaam hai.
9. takliif mat-karoo.
10. aap-kee baal-baččee kahāā hāī.

III

1. meeraa xiaal hai kee aap-kaa naam raam laal hai.
2. meeree baRaa bhaaii fauj-mēē hāī.
3. ab aap kahāā rah*tee hāī.
4. kiaa mǎi aap-see kal mil saktaa hūū ?
5. mujh-kōb maaluum nahī. meeraa xiaal nahī.
6. uo ituaar-koo kaam kartaa hai.
7. kiaa aap us-koo jaantee hāī ?
8. us-kaa peēśaa kiaa hai.
9. kal mangal hai.
10. us-kī bahen eek xuubsuurat laRkīī hai.

IV

1. isTeeśan iahāā-see bahot duur nahī.
2. mǎi ajnabīī hūū.

3. mǎi thooRee paisee-kee līee aap-koo mašhuur jaghēē dikhaaūū-
gaa.
4. kīnaa uaḡt lagtaa hai ?
5. aasaanii-see paidal jaḡ saktee hāī.
6. ham-koo bahot uaḡt hai.
7. īee mandir hai iaa masjid.
8. Chat bahot uūčīi hai.
9. meeraa doost thakaa hai.
10. ham jaldīi nīīčee aaēē-gee.

V

1. mǎi kučh duudh xariidnaa čaah*taa hūū.
2. mǎi aspataal-mēē hūū.
3. hamaaree-paas sab kīsim-kaa khaanaa hai.
4. kiaa īee taazaa hai ?
5. īee jaldīi xaraab hootaa hai.
6. šaaed kisaan loog aaēē-gee.
7. mǎi kiōō puučhūū.
8. meeraa doost meere saath gaaōō-koo jaāee-gaa.
9. īee mǎh*gaḡ hai.
10. kiaa aap narangiāā beečtee hāī ?

p. 83: I

1. masjid-kee dah*nīi taraf hooTal hai.
2. aaj duudh aččaa hai.
3. dukaan uahāā nahī hai. siidhee hai.
4. aaj kiaa din hai.
5. mǎi das sigreT čaah*taa hūū.
6. anDee bahot mǎh*gee hāī.
7. kiaa aap īee čaah*tee hāī iaa uoo.
8. mǎi uoo čaah*taa hūū.
9. kiaa aap goōšṡ khaanaa pasand kartee hāī ?
10. iahāā khaanaa xaraab hai.

II

1. aap-kaa naam kiaa hai.
2. uoo hindustaanīi booltaa hai.
3. leekin uoo dhiiree booltaa hai.

4. hindustaanii booliice. mǎi samjhtaa hūū.
5. mǎi kahāā jaaūū.
6. meeree saath zaruur jaaiee.
7. kiaa kal Thīik hai ?
8. andar aaiee. mǎi bahot xuš hūū.
9. mǎi aap-see mil-kar bahot xuš hūū.
10. mǎi amriikaa-mee paRhnee-kee liice jaaūū-gaa.

III

1. meerasa xiaal hai kee uoo iahāā hai.
2. kiaa aap us-kaa naam jaantee hāi ?
3. uoo loog jahaazii aur sipaahii hāi.
4. mǎi dukandaar-see milnaa čaah'taa hūū.
5. janaab, dukandaar-koo thooRaa kaam hai.
6. uoo kal dukaan-mēē kaam karee-gaa.
7. meeraa čhooTaa bhaaii eek doost-kee saath rah'taa hai.
8. meeree doost paidal čalnaa bahot pasand kartee hāi.
9. meeraa bhaaii bhii pasand kartaa hai.
10. leekin uoo paRhnaa bhii pasand kartaa hai.

IV

1. mǎi aap-koo šaher dikhaanaa čaah'taa hūū.
2. thooRaa uakt lagree-gaa.
3. aap mujh-koo kiaa dēē-gee.
4. ice mooTar kitnii duur jaatii hai.
5. janaab, paidal mat-jaaiee. ice bahot duur hai.
6. meeraa xiaal hai kee hamaaree paas kaafii paisaa hai.
7. janaab, mujh-koo paisee pah'lee dijiiee.
8. is imaarat-mee kooii lifT nahī.
9. lifT niīčee hai.
10. kiaa mai niīčee paidal čalūū ?

V

1. kiaa mai uoo beečūū, ia aaur xariidūū.
2. uoo loog gaaōō-see phal aaur anDee laatee hāi.
3. un-kee phal xaraab aaur bahot māl'gee hāi.
4. uoo bahot paisaa leetee hāi.
5. kiaa mǎi uoo hooTal-mēē bheejuū ia aaspataal-mēē.

6. aap-kee doost-kaa kiaa naam hai.
7. janaab, kiaa aap paisaa fauran dēē-gee ?
8. uoʊ fauran bheejoo.
9. māi narangiāā lūū-gaa.
10. uoo aspataal-see kab aace-gaa.

p. 85

1. “*Do you want to stay in India ?*”

Das: kiaa aap hindustaan-mēē kučh haftee aur rah^e sakēē-gii ?

Mary: šaaed rah^e sakūū. leekin māi nahii čaah^etii.

Das: kiōō,

Mary: māi garmii pasand nahii kartii.

Das: garmii, meeree liice bahot Thiik hai.

Mary: aap too hindustaan-kee hāi, aur māi amriikan hūū janaab.
māi uaapas jaanaa čaah^etii hūū.

p. 86

2. “*Where do you work ?*”

Jim: aap-kaa peēšaa kiaa hai.

Das: māi sipaahii hūū, leekin abhii kisaan-kaa kaam kartaa hūū.

Jim: aap kahāā kaam kartee hāi;

Das: baap-kee liice.

Jim: too aap-kee baap is gaaōō-mēē rah^etee hāi ?

Das: jii nahii.

gaaōō-mēē un-kii eek jagaa too hai.

leekin abhii uoo šaaher-mēē rah^etee hāi.

3. “*When can I meet you for dinner ?*”

Jim: salaam.

Das: salaam.

Jim: kiaa aap kal šaaher-mēē rahēē-gee ?

Das: mujh-koo maalum nahii.

šaaed gaaōō-koo kal uaapas jaaūū.

Jim: aaj māi aap-see mil saktaa hūū ?

Das: baRii xušii-see janaab,

too ham doonōō baaraa bajee khaanaa khaaēē.

Jim: aččhaa janaab. hooTal-mēē milūū-gaa. salaam.

Das: xudaa haafiz.

4. “*Do you know Dick Miller ?*”

Das: kiaa aap Dick Miller-koo jaantee hāi ?

Jim: jii hāā. uoo too meeree puraanee doost hāi.
 Das: aap-koo maaluum hai uoo abhii kahāā rahṭee hāi ?
 Jim: meeree ghar-mēē.
 Das: ačḥaa too uoo šaher-mēē kab-see hāi.
 Jim: sirf eek ghanTee-see.
 Das: un-see milnee-kee liice, kiaa aap-kee saath aa saktaa hūū ?
 Jim: aaīee janaab. xušii-see.

5. "Jim gets lost with his car."

Jim: bhaai, māi iahāā ajnabii hūū.
 kiaa aap aspataal-kii saRak dikhaa saktee hāi ?
 Das: ice sirf čhooTaa gaaōō hai, aur iahāā aspataal nahii.
 leekin iahāā-see bahot duur šaher-mēē baRaa aspataal hai.
 Jim: kiaa uoo fauj-kaa aspataal hai ?
 Das: jii hāā jii hāā.
 kiaa aap abhii uahāā jaanaa čaahṭee hāi ?
 Jim: zaruur zaruur. kiōō-kee mujh-koo bahot uakt nahii.
 aap jaantee hāi kee māi sipaahii hūū ?
 Das: aap siidhee jāīee, aur nadii-kee kariib, dahṇii taraf jāīīee.
 aur uahāā aap baRii imaat deekhṭē-gee ?
 uoo aspataal hai.
 Jim: šukriaa janaab.
 Das: kučḥ baat nahii, xudaa haafiz.

p. 87

6. "Charlie's family and the war."

meeraa naam *Charlie Jones* hai.
 māi jahazii hūū.
 meeree doo bhaai sipaahii hāi.
 eek abhii hindustaan-mēē hai,
 aur duusraa *Australia*-mēē šaaed jāāee.¹
 meerii bahṇēē bhii, aspataal-mēē, *Red Cross*-kaa kaam kartii hāi.
 afsoos-kii baat, kee meeree baap, fauj-kaa kaam nahii kar saktee,
 kiōō-kee ačḥee nahii.
 māi jahazii hūū,
 aaj amriikaa-mēē, kal duusrii jagaa,
 jahazii-koo, kabhii nahii maaluum, uoo kahaā jāāee-gaa.

7. "Das is looking for a job."

Jim: aap kaun hāi, aur kiaa čaahṭee hāi.

¹ The records have "*Australia*. šaaed jāāee," by mistake.

Das: mǎi kaam čaah*taa hūū.

kiaa aap-kee paas kučh kaam hai?

Jim: aap-kaa peešaa kiaa hai.

Das: mǎi mooTar-kaa kaam kartaa hūū.

Jim: meeree paas, abhii is kisim-kaa kaam nahī.
leekin doo haftee-mēē phir aaīīee.

meeraa xiaal hai kee meerii biīūīī-kee bhaai-kīī¹ mooTar
xaraab hai.

mǎi us-see puūčhūū-gaa.

8. "Bargaining."

Jim: kiaa aap-kīī dukaan-mēē anDee hāī?

Das: bahot, janaab, bahot.

Jim: darjan-kaa daam kiaa hai.

Das: das aanee, giaaraa aanee, aur teeraa.
aap kis kisim-kee čaah*tee hāī.

Jim: taazee anDōō-kaa daam kiaa hai.

Das: taazee anDōō-kaa daam, pandraa aanee hāī.

Jim: kiōō. ıee too bahot māl*gee hāī.

Das: taazee, janaab, ıee taazee hāī.

Jim: mǎi sirf čaudaa aanee dūū-gaa.

Das: aaj nahī. kal aaīīee.

Jim: too mǎi hamešāa duusrii dukaan-mēē jaaūū-gaa.

Das: nahī janaab. ıee aap-kīī dukaan hai. maaf kījīīee.

9. "Jim goes to see Mr. Das at his house."

Jim: kiaa daas saaheb ghar-par hāī?

Husein: abhīi aspataal-mēē hāī janaab.

Jim: kab uaapas aaēē-gee.

Husein: mujh-koo maaluum nahī.

meeree xiaal-mēē, sirf thooRaa uakt lagee-gaa.

Jim: kiaa giaaraa bajee uaapas aaūū?

Husein: jīi hāā zaruur; giaaraa bajee Thiik hoo-gaa.

Jim: daas aspataal-mēē kiōō hāī.

Husein: un-kee bhaai aččhee nahī.

Jim: afsos-kīī baat.

too kis aspataal-mēē hāī.

šaaed mǎi un-koo deekhnee-kee lıee jaaūū.

¹ The records have -kaa. mooTar is sometimes used as a masculine noun.

Here are the answers to the questions on pp. 85-86:

1

1. hindustaan-mēē.
2. amriikaa-see.
3. nahī.
4. uaapas jaanaa čaah*ti hai.
5. garmii pasand nahī kartii.
6. us-kee liice garmii Thik hai.
7. maaluum nahī.
8. nahī.

2

1. gaaōō-mēē.
2. nahī.
3. nahī.
4. nahī.
5. šaher-mēē.
6. gaaōō-mēē eek jagaa.
7. maaluum nahī.

3

1. šaher-mēē.
2. hāā.
3. hāā.
4. šaēd kal gaaōō-koo aaee.
5. hooTal-mēē milēē-gee.
6. gaaōō-mee.
7. maaluum nahī.

4

1. Jim-kaa doost hai.
2. sirf daas us-koo nahī jaantaa.
3. Jim-kee ghar-mēē.
4. nahī.
5. Jim-kee ghar-koo.
6. eek ghanTee-see.
7. Dick Miller-see milnaa čaah*taa hai.

1. aspataal-koo.
2. hāā.
3. eek ČhooTee gaaōō-mēē.
4. sipaahii hai.
5. nahii.
6. šaher-mēē.
7. fauj-kaa hai.
8. baRii imaarat hai.

1. *Charlie Jones*.
2. jahaazii hai.
3. doo.
4. eek bhaaii.
5. aspataal-mēē kaam kartii hāi.
6. maalum nahii.
7. aččhee nahii.
8. maalum nahii.

1. nahii.
2. nahii.
3. mooTar-kaa kaam kartaa hai.
4. doo haftee-mēē.
5. maalum nahii.
6. maalum nahii.

1. dukaan-mēē.
2. dukaan-kaa kaam kartaa hai.
3. anDee Čaah*taa hai.
4. anDee taazee hāi.
5. čaar kisim-kee.
6. pāāč-aanee-see aaTh aanee-tak.
7. sirf čaudaa aanee deenaa Čaah*taa hai.
8. nahii.
9. hāā.

1. hāā.
2. nahū.
3. nahū.
4. sirf thooRaa uakt.
5. nahū.
6. giaaraa bajee-see pah*lee.

p. 97

1. a

p. 98

2. c
3. c
4. b
5. a
6. b
7. thii
8. thaa
9. thee
10. thū
11. imaartēē
12. laRkiāā
13. (What's your name ?)
14. (Do your children live here ?)
15. (What does your friend do for a living ?)
16. (Do you like the movies ?)
17. (What day is today ?)
18. (When will you go to town ?)
19. (How long does it take to go to the station ?)
20. (Do you want to smoke a cigarette ?)

p. 113

1. lagtee

p. 114

2. leetaa
3. laataa
4. dikhtaa
5. dikhaae-gü
6. nahii deekh
7. kartee
8. kah*tee
9. khaatee
10. nazdiik
- 11.¹ garib
12. xaraab
13. a
14. a
15. b
16. b
17. b
18. c

p. 119

19. (How are your parents ?)
20. (Do you have children ?)
21. (Since when have you been here ?)
22. (How old are you ?)
23. (Does anybody else stay with you ?)
24. (Where does your father work ?)
25. (Do you like your food without salt ?)

p. 129

1. -kii uajaa-see
2. -kii taraa
3. sipaahiiôo-kee liiee
4. khaanee-kee saath
5. -kee liiee
6. us-kee bagair
7. apnii

¹ *precedes* asdmii

8. meerii . . . meeree
9. meerii . . . apnee
10. meeraa
11. apnaa
12. khaa rahaa
13. khaataa
14. kar rahaa
15. a
16. b
17. b
18. c
19. (Do you like the weather around here ?)
20. (Do you like rain better than fog ?)
21. (How will you get money ?)
22. (Is the sun visible ?)

p. 130

23. (What kind of a coat is best for rainy weather ?)
24. (How long will you stay here ?)
25. (Is it cooler today than it was yesterday ?)
26. (Why do you live here ?)
27. (Do you like your work ?)

p. 142

1. xatraa
2. xabar
3. axbaar
4. kursiāā
5. kitaabēē
6. khiRkiāā
7. aatee
8. aa rahee
9. siikhtee
10. sikhaataa
11. soor kartee
12. galtiāā kartee
13. šuruu hootaa
14. b
15. c

p. 143

16. a
17. c
18. (How many students are there in this class ?)
19. (What is your teacher's name ?)
20. (What do you study ?)
21. (Is there any news in the newspaper ?)
22. (What paper do you read ?)
23. (Where do you put your coat ?)
24. (How many chairs are there in this room ?)
25. (Ask your friend a question !)

p. 157

1. čhuTtīi
2. čhatrīi
3. baahar
4. pahaaRōō-koo
5. kabhīi
6. kab
7. jab
8. rah*tee hāi
9. hoo
10. rahoo-gee
11. kis
12. kisiī
13. b
14. c
15. a
16. (How old are you ?)
17. (When will you get a vacation ?)
18. (Do you like to travel ?)
19. (What will you do after the war ?)
20. (Do you think it will be raining tomorrow ?)
21. (What color is your coat ?)
22. (Were you ever in the mountains ?)
23. (How many storeys are there in this building ?)
24. (Do you like a train better than a ship ?)
25. (Ask someone a question !)

1. čāād har raat-koo dikhtaa hai. F
2. har jaaan aadmii šaadii-šūdaa hai. F
3. baraf garam nahii. T
4. eek haftee-mēē budh jumraat-kee pah^{le}tee hootaa hai. T
5. eek din-mēē aThaais-see ziaadaa ghanTee hootee hāi. F
6. baaeskoop aur snamaa eek čiiž hāi. T
7. hindustaan-mēē kooii nadiiāā nahii. F
8. koh^{re}-mēē deekhnaa muškil hai. F
9. paččiis ikkais-see kam hai. F
10. hušiaar loog beeokuuf hāi. F
11. dhuup suuraj-see hootii hai. T
12. eek haftee-mēē čaubiis ghanTee hootee hāi. F
13. axbaar-mēē kabhii galtiiaa nahii. F
14. amrikaa-mēē pahaaR nahii. F
15. amrikan loog subaa-koo kučh nahii khaatee. F
16. iskuul-kee kamrōō-mēē meezēē hāi. T
17. xat likhnee-kee liiee kaagaz čaahiiee. T
18. axbaar-kii sab xabrēē laRaaii-kii baabat hāi. F
19. baadal saxt hāi. F
20. amrikaa-mēē bahot aurtēē baal kaTaati hāi. T
21. haaaz-see kabhii kabhii šoor hootaa hai. T
22. hindustaan-see amrikaa-koo jahaaz-see jaanaa muškil hai. F
23. pahaaRōō-par aab-o-hauaa ničee-kii jaghōō-see ziaadaa
garam hai. T
24. biimaar loogōō-koo aaraam karnaa čaahiiee. T
25. amrikaa-mēē meezōō-par baiThnaa Thiik nahii. T
26. khiRkiōō-see roošni kamree-kee andar aatii hai. T
27. ummiid aur koōšiš eek čiiž hāi. F
28. likhnaa hameešaa xatarnaak hai. F
29. kamree kabhii kabhii saaf karnaa čaahiiee. T
30. ġarib loogōō-kee paas bahot paisaa nahii. T
31. maillee kapRee dhoonaa čaahiiee. T
32. piaasaa aadmii hameešaa bhuukaa bhii hai. F
33. har aadmii apnii maa-kii bahⁿōō-kaa bhaaii hai. F
34. jab aasmaan saaf hoo, too zaruur baariš hoo-ġi. F
35. eek saal-mēē baaraa baras hāi. F
36. baariš-mēē čalne-see kisi-koo zukaam hootaa hai. T

37. jab baariš šuruu hoo, too aasmaan-par bilkul badal nahii. F
 38. sab taalib-ilm bahot hušaar hāī. F
 39. baraf-see baariš-kaa paanii garam hai. T
 40. kaagaz khaanee-mēē bahot mazeedaar hai. F

(22F; 18 T)

p. 163: I

1. tamaašaa aččhaa thaa.
2. kiaa māī aap-kee saath aaūū ?
3. aap kal raat kahāā thee.
4. aap-kii kitnii bah'nēē hai.
5. gaanaa bajaanaa mazeedaar thaa.
6. uoō biimaar thii.
7. sinamaa jaldii šuruu hoo-gaa.
8. khaanee-kee baad baal ka Taaīīee.
9. tamaašēe-koo jaanee-kee pah'lee, uoō hamaaree ghar-mee thaa.
10. laRkiāā šaheer-mee thii.

p. 163: II

1. māī apnii māā-kii ghar-mēē rahūū-gaa.
2. meeraa xiaal hai kee uoō aččhee hāī.
3. meeraa xiaal hai kee uoō aččhii hāī.
4. mujh-koo naee kaarxaanee dikhaaīīee.
5. us-kii kitnii bah'nēē thii.
6. aap-kee baap-kii kiaa umar hai.

p. 164

7. uoō kab šaadii karee-gaa.
8. aap-koo kučh kaam hoo-gaa ? mujh-koo afsos hai.
9. us-keē kapRee dhooīīee.
10. un loogōō-koo soonaa hai.

III

1. kaarxaanaa kis taraf hai.
2. meerii čhatrīī diijīīee.
3. mujh-koo apnii čhatrīī diijīīee.
4. māī mooTar kahāā-see laaūū.
5. mai koh'raa xatam hoonee-tak Thairūū-gaa.

6. garmii xatam hoonee-tak Thairiiee.
7. ab baariš nahii hoo rahii hai; leekin kal zaruur hoo-gii.
8. kapRee mailee hāi.
9. garmii-mēe is taraf bahot dhuup hootii hai.
10. aap-koo kis kisim-kaa tamaašaa sab-see ziaadaa pasand hai.

IV

1. hamaaraa kooii ustaad nahii.
2. kiaa aap har rooz zabaanēe paRhaatee hāi ?
3. čup rahiiee.
4. us-koo kahiiee kee čup rahoo.
5. meez-kee uupar mat-baiThiiee.
6. ustaad us-koo kahee-gaa kee ziaadaa paRhoo.
7. tum bahot galitiāā kartee hoo.
8. un-koo in kursiōō aur meezōō-kii zaruurat nahii.
9. iee kursiāā TuuTii hāi.
10. kiaa uoo is kaam-kee liiee aččhii hai ?

V

1. mujh-koo is saal čhuTii nahii milee-gii.
2. safar karnaa māh'gaa aur xatamaak hai.
3. meeree xiaal-mēe is-mēe kooii xatraa nahii.
4. uahāā jaanee-mēe aThaaraa rupae ziaadaa nahii lagee-gaa.
5. mazaa karoo.
6. aap kis kisim-kaa TikiT xariidnaa čaahiiee.
7. mujh-koo eek aanee jaanee-kaa aur doo jaanee-kee TikiT čaahiiee.
8. apnao bakas isTeešan-kee baahar mat-čhooRoo.
9. uahāā bhii mat-rakhoo.
10. baabuu šaaed aap-koo duusrōō-kee kooT dee, kiōō-kee uoo beokuuf hai.
1. sinamaa šuruu hoonee-tak Thairiiee.
2. is-kii baabat mujh-see na-puučhiiee.
3. mujh-koo baal ka Taanee-kii zaruurat hai.
4. māi kahāā jaaūū.
5. kiaa aap-koo kučh xariidnee-kii zaruurat hai ?

6. kiaa aap-koo kooii bhaaii aur bal'nēē hāi ?
7. apnee baRee bhaaii-kaa laRkaa apnee saath laaiee.
8. kiaa apnii mǎā aap-kee saath aace-gii ?
9. mǎi aap-kee bhaaii-kee saath šaher jaaũ-gaa.
10. kiaa aap apnee bhaaii-kee saath iahǎā thee ?

II

1. uoo apnaa naiaa ghar apnee doostōō-koo dikhaa rahee hāi.
2. uoo apnee doostōō-kee liee kuč nahii kartii hāi.
3. naiaa naukār ghar-kaa sab kaam kartaa hai.
4. meerec kapRee mat-dhooiee. mǎi dhooũ-gaa.
5. uoo piaasii thii. bhuukii nahii.
6. kuč aaraam karnee-kee baad paRhnee-kii koošiš karoo.
7. khaanaa khaanee-kee bagair iskuul-koo mat-jaaō.
8. naukarōō-koo kahoo kee khaanaa taiiaar karē.
9. aap-koo kuch namak čaahiiee ?
10. jab ham aap-kee ghar-mēē thee, too aap-kee baap soo nahii rahee thee.

III

1. mausam hameēšaa aisaa nahii hootaa.
2. meeree paas barsaatii nahii hai.
3. kiaa aap-kee paas meerii čhatrīi hai iaa apnii.
4. aasmaan saaf hai.
5. aasmaan-mēē baadal nahii hāi.
6. kabhii kabhii ThanDii-mēē bilkul dhuup nahii hootii.
7. mujh-koo čhatrīi kabāā milee-gii.
8. hauaa aaj kal-see teež hai.
9. aap čhatrīi-kee bagair baahar nahii jaa saktee.
10. baraf-kii uajaa-see saRak-par čalnaa xatarnaak hai.

IV

1. kiaa aap hindustaan jaanee-kee pah'lee hindustaanii paRhēē-gee ?
2. kiaa aap-koo kuč kitaabōō-kii zaruurat hai ?
3. mai aap-koo apnii kitaabēē dũũ-gaa, aur aap apnee doost-kii kitaabēē mujh-koo diijiiee.
4. hindustaanii boolnee-kii koošiš karoo.

5. apnee sauaal puučhnee-kee pah'lee meeree sauaal-kaa janaab doo.
6. kias is subaa axbaar-mēē kučh xabar hai?
7. tum-koo kal kooii xat nahii milē-gee.
8. mujh-koo is ghar-mēē bijfi-kii battiōō-kii zaruurat nahii.
9. kaagaz rakh doo.
10. kias aap amrikaa-mēē pah'lee kabhii nahii thee?

V

1. kučh loog hauaaii jahaaz-mēē jaanee-see biimaar hoo jaate hāi.
2. māi is garmii-mēē eek nai jagaa-par rahūū-gaa.
3. mazaa karnee-kee liice paisee-kii zaruurat hai.
4. baabu-see puučhiice kee TikiT-kaa kias daam hai.
5. kias aap-kee paas kalkattaa jaanee-kee liice pah'lee darjee-kaa TikiT hai?
6. laRaaii-kii uajaa-see safar karnaa muškil hai.
7. laRaaii-kee baad hauaaii jahaaz-mēē safar karnaa ziaadaa māh'gaa nahii hoo-gaa.
8. iee gaaRiñā hameśāa deer-mēē aatii hāi.
9. safar karnee-kee pah'lee apnaa saamaan bheej doo.
10. ham har saal pahaaRōō-mēē apnee ghar jaatee hāi.

p. 166

1. "Movies or stage."

- Das: Šaam-koo sinamee-mēē jaanee-kee liice meeree saath aaēē,
janaab.
- Jim: mujh-koo sinamee-mēē mazaa nahii aataa.
- Das: leekin šaam-koo eek bahot mašhuur naaTak deekh saktee hāi,
aur mujh-koo maaltuum nahii kee kab šaaher-koo uaapas
aaēē.

Jim: Thiuk janaab. sinamaa too hameśāa deekh saktee hāi.

p. 167

2. "Customs inspection."

Das: aap kahāā-see aatee hāi janaab.

Ram Lal: nuuisark-see.

Das: aap hindustaan-mēē kahāā rahṭee hai.
 Ram Lal: bambaii-mēē janaab.
 Das: aap kab-tak amrikaa-mēē thee.
 Ram Lal: eek baras.
 Das: aur abhii kab-tak hindustaan-mēē rahēē-gee.
 Ram Lal: mujh-koo maaluum nahī. baahar jaanee-kī kuḥ aur zaruurat nahī.
 Das: kiaa iee aap-kaa saamaan hai?
 Ram Lal: iee doo baṛee aur pāāḥ ḥooṭee bakas meeree hai.
 Das: in-mēē kiaa hai. kuḥ naii ḥiizēē?
 Ram Lal: jii nahī. naii ḥiizēē too kooii nahī.
 Das: sirf puraanee kapṛee, kitaabēē, kaagaz, uagairaa uagairaa.
 Ram Lal: sab bakas dikhaaūū?
 Das: sirf ḥooṭee.
 Das: iee kiaa hai. barsaatii?
 Ram Lal: barsaatii too hai. leekin naii nahī.
 Das: Thiik janaab.

3. "Newspapers."

Jim: tum kiaa paṛh rahēē hoo.
 Das: axbaar hai. māi rooz paṛhṭaa hūū.
 Jim: is ṣaḥer-kaa sab-see aḥḥaa axbaar kaun hai.
 Das: is ṣaḥer-kee axbaar māi kabhii nahī paṛhṭaa.
 Jim: in-mēē kuch baṛii xabrēē nahī.
 Das: aur bilkul mazeedaar nahī.
 Jim: māi bambaii aur kalkattee-kee axbaar ziaadaa pasand kartaa hūū.
 Das: un-mēē laṛaii-kī baabat sab xabrēē miltii hai.
 Jim: kalkattee-kee axbaaro-kaa is jagēē kiaa daam hai.
 Das: har rooz axbaar xariidnee-mēē eek aanaa.
 Jim: leekin baras-kee liie leenē-mēē kam hai.
 Das: ṣaaed māi bhii kalkattee-kee axbaar paṛhūū.

4. "The new house."

Das: meeree uaaldain naee ghar-mee rahṭee hai.
 Jim: ghar doo darjēē-kaa hai.
 Das: niiḥēē-kee darjēē-par ḥaar kamree hai.
 Jim: doo rahṭee-kee kamree,

eek likhnee paRhnee-kaa kamraa.
aur eek khaanee-kaa kamraa,
uupar-kee darjee-par tiin soonee-kee kamree aur eek
nahaanee-kaa kamraa hai.
ghar šaher-kee kariib hai.

p. 168

5. "Das' sister."

Jim: aap-kii bahen kaisii hāi.
Das: meherbaanii. un-koo kučh buxaar thaa, leekin abhii
ačChii hāi.
Jim: kiasa abhii-tak madraas-mēē rab-tii hāi?
Das: jii hāā. un-kee xāūind thooRee din-see duusraa kaam
kartee hāi.
Jim: kiasa uo abhii-tak iskuul-mēē paRhaatee hāi?
Das: kaati-j-mee zabaanēē paRhaatee hāi.
Jim: ačChaa.
Das: kiasa uo kabhii hindustaan-kee baahar safar-mēē thee?
nahii. leekin ummiid hai kee eek saal-kee baad amrikaa-
kaa safar karēē.
Jim: mai bahot xuš hūū. xudaa haafiz.
Das: salaam.

6. "Das and Ram Lal are riding up the elevator. Ram Lal invites Das to look at his new office."

Ram Lal: aap-kaa naiaa daftar kis darjee-par hai.
Das: is darjee-mēē hai. kiasa aap deekhnaa čaahtee hāi?
Ram Lal: aoō čālēē. dikhaao.
Das: andar čaliiee. kooii aur andar nahii.
kiasa daftar pasand hai?
Ram Lal: puraanaa daftar is-see ačChaa thaa.
is-mēē kamree too baRee hāi, aur kasfi jagaa hai,
leekin andheeraa dikhtaa hai, kiōō-kee kaafi khiRkiūāā
nahii.
Das: iee Thiuk hai.
leekin puraanaa daftar hamaaree ghar-see duur thaa.
moōTar-kee bagair aanaa jaanaa muškil thaa.
iee jagaa ghar-kee kariib hai,
aur paidal jaanaa aasaan hai.

7. "Simla"

hindustaan-mēē bahot baRii baRii mašhuur nadiāā hāī.
sab-see ūūceē pahaaR-kaa naam himaalīaa hai.
us-par šimlaa baRaa šaher hai.

aur uahāā ThanDii-mēē bahot baraf girtii hai.
leekin garmii-mēē uahāā-kii aab-o-hauaa bahot aččhii hai.
aasmaan hameēšaa saaf hai.
bahot loog garmii-mēē madraas aur bambaii uagairaa-see šimlee-koo
jaatee hāī.

Here are the answers to the questions on pp.166-168:

1

1. sinamee-koo.
2. kīaa meereē saath aaēē-gee ?
3. nahīi.
4. sinamaa nahīi pasand kartaa, leekin naaTak pasand kartaa hai.
5. naaTak-koo jaaēē.
6. us-koo maalum nahīi kee šaher-koo kab uaapaas aaee-gaa.
7. naaTak-koo jaataa hai.

2

1. *inspector* hai.
2. nuuīaark-see.
3. bambaii-mēē.
4. aap kab-tak amriikaa-mēē thee ?
5. hindustaan-mēē.
6. amriikaa-mēē.
7. saat.
8. hāā.
9. sirf čhooTee bakas.
10. kučh naii čüzēē hāī ?
11. sirf puraaneē kapRee, kaagaz, kītaabēē.
12. pāāč.

3

1. hāā.
2. axbaar paRh raahaa hai.
3. eek šaher-mēē.
4. har rooz.
5. is-mēē kučh baRii xabrēē nahīi.

6. laRaaii-kii baabat sab xabrée.
7. maaluum nahū.
8. har rooz xaridnee-mēē eek aanaa.
9. kalkattee-kaa axbaar paRhee-gaa.

4

1. hāā.
2. un-kee ualdain eek naee ghar-mee rah*tee hāi.
3. maaluum nahū.
4. nahū.
5. doo.
6. haa.
7. saat *or* aaTh.
8. nahū.
9. šaher-kee ʔariib.
10. nahū.
11. hāā.

5

1. maaluum nahū.
2. nahū. kuč buxaar thaa.
3. madraas-mēē.
4. nahū, xāūind-kee saath.
5. maaluum nahū.
6. maaluum nahū.
7. paRhaatee hāi.
8. nahū.
9. zabaanēē paRhaatee hāi.
10. nahū.
11. amriikaa-koo.
12. hāā. eek saal-kee baad.

6

1. hāā.
2. kooii nahū.
3. nahū.
4. kamree baRee hāi aur kaaafii jagaa hai. leekin andheeraa dikhtaa hai.
5. kaaafii nahū.
6. hāā.
7. nahū.

8. mooTar-kee bagair aanaa jaanaa muškil thaa.
9. nahī.

7

1. sab-see ūčaa pabaaR hai.
2. himaaliiaa pabaaRōō-par.
3. bahot baRii baRii hai.
4. garmii-mēē aččii hai, leekin ThanDii-mee bahot baraf girtii hai.
5. ThanDii-mēē.
6. aab-o-hauaa-kii uajaa-see.
7. nahī. aasmaan saaf hai.
8. maaluum nahī.

p. 183

1. b
2. b
3. a
4. uoo hamešaa aab-o-hauaa-kii baabat baatčiit kartaa hai.
5. takriiban teeraa taalib-ilm darjee-mēē hāi.
6. ham guzree saal nuuiaark-mēē thee.
7. ham duusree saal hindustaan-koo jaaēē-gee.
8. saaRhee saat bajee khaanaa xatam kartaa hai.
9. sinamaa sauaa aaTh bajee xatam hootaa hai.
10. baariš šuruu hoonee-kee baad mujh-koo barsaatii čaahiiee.
11. aap kab likhnaa šuruu kartee hāi.
12. uoo likhnee-kii koošiš kartaa hai.
13. us-kii daauat karē.
14. juutee-kii marammat karaanaa čaahētaa huū.
15. kīaa uakt hai.
16. aap hindustaan-mēē kitnii dafaa thee.
17. jaanee-kaa uakt hai.
18. māi pahēlii dafaa nuuiaark jaaūū-gaa.

p. 197: 1

1. gaaRii paač bajee čhuuTtii hai.
2. gaaRii paač bajee čhuuTtii.
3. gaaRii paač bajee čhuuTtii thii.
4. uoo jaldii aai.
5. mai ghar aaiaa.
6. mai iskuul jaataa thaa.
7. ghar jaanee-mēē tiin ghanTee lagee.

8. mai nahū samjhaa.

9. laRkiāā kal pāṛcī.

10. uo us-kii kursii-mēē baiThī.

11. us-koo bahot paisaa milaa.

12. laRkee soee.

2

1. b

2. c

3. a

p. 211: 1

1. us-nee safar kiiaa.

2. nahū. us-kee eek doost us-kee saath thaa.

3. us-nee kheet deekhaa.

4. maereee xiaal-mēē us-nee mazaa kiiaa.

5. aziiz-kaa doost mooTar čalaaneeuaalaa thaa.

6. jii hāā. uaapas aanee-mēē aziiz-nee čalaanee-kii koošiš kii.

7. daraxt-see Takkar khaaii.

8. jii nahū. us-nee xud marammat na-kii.

9. doost-nee kaariigar-koo bulaaiaa.

10. unhōō-nee kisaan-kii mulaakaat kii.

11. kheet-mēē jaanuar, baag uagairaa deekhee.

12. kheet-mēē phal aur tambaakuu paidaa hootaa thaa.

13. bahot kisaan loog gariib hāi.

14. bail gaaree ghooRee thee.

15. bail kheetii-kee liiee hai.

16. nahū. aziiz-nee kuč čaaee pii.

17. baag ghar-kee piūchee thaa.

18. thooRaa geehū paidaa hootaa hai.

19. amrikan kisaan loog makaaii paidaa kartee hāi.

20. jii nahū. māi nahū jaantaa kee hindustaan-mēē geehū kahāā paidaa hootaa hai.

21. mooTar banaanaa bahot muškil hai.

2

1. dukandaar-nee eek kitaab beečii.

2. unhōō-nee goošt khaaiaa.

3. ham-nee bahot imaartēē deekhū.

4. laRkee-nee xat milaa.

5. us-nee kapRee utaaree.
6. mǎi-nee us-koo paisaa díiaa.
7. us-nee mujh-see sauaal pučhaa.
8. meerii bahen-nee kitaab likhii.
9. meerii bahen-nee axbaar paRhaa.
10. us-nee narangiiāā lī.
11. kaariigar-nee bijlii-kii battii Thiik kii.
12. us-kii mǎā-nee khaanaa tǎiaar kíiaa.
13. us-nee narangiiāā lī.
14. laRkii-nee kapRee dhooee.
15. mǎi-nee us-koo deekhaa.
16. unhōō-nee paanii píiaa.
17. aap-nee kíaa kíiaa.
18. meereee bhaaii-nee kooT ČhooRaa.
19. ham-nee mooTar xaridii.
20. aap-nee us-koo kab bulaaiaa.

p. 227: 1

1. amriikaa-see.
2. nahī.
3. sipaahii thaa.
4. nahī.
5. amriikaa-mēē kooii hindustaani loogōō-nee díiaa thaa.
6. nahī. angreezii booltaa thaa.
7. eek doost-kaa joo inglistaan-see aaiaa thaa.
8. dastuur-kee mutaabik uahāā rah'nee lagaa.
9. nahī.
10. nahī. khoo gaii thii.
11. nahī. us-mēē Čheed thaa.
12. darzii-nee.
13. patluun istrii kii aur kamīiz-koo dhoo-kar daag nikaalaa..
14. nahī. Thiik kii.
15. baal kaaTee aur sir dhooiaa.
16. peeT-mēē dard šuruu huuaa.
17. hāā. jin-koo us-nee deekhaa, un-see baatčūt karnee-kii koošīš kii.
18. aisií teež Čalaaii kee Takkar khaai.
19. nahī.
20. kahaā kee uoo loog meeree doost nahī.

p. 227: 2

1. ažiiz-kaa meh'maan amriikaa-see aaiaa thaa.
2. nahī. mǎi us-kaa intezaar nahī kartaa thaa.
3. uoo amriikan sipaahii thaa.
4. ažiiz us-koo nahī jaantaa thaa.
5. us-kaa pataa kooii hindustaanii loogōō-nee amriikaa-mēē dīaa.
6. nahī. angreezii booltaa thaa.
7. ažiiz eek doost-kaa joo inglistaan-see aaiaa intezaar kartaa thaa.
8. dastuur-kee mutaabik̄ us-kee saath rah'taa thaa.
9. us-koo maaluum nahī kee uahāā kaun rah'taa hai.
10. us-nee mujhee kahaa kee meez kis-nee beečii.

p. 240

1. saat aThaaraa iktiis giaraa pandraa aThaaraa unčaaalis iktiis
untiis bataaalis čaūtiis;
čaudaa čaubiis tētiis pandraa baais sataauan tētiis teeis tiis
aThaa is aRtaalis pačaa; baais čauaalis sātiis aaTh tiis ikkiauan čaalis aRtaalis saaTh
sātiis baais.
2. khaataa . . . hootaa; khaaū . . . hūū-gaa
aatee . . . rah'taa; aaee . . . rahūū-gaa
miltee . . . deetee; milēē . . . diījīee
deekhtaa . . . deetaa; dekhee . . . dee
3. us-nee khiRkii tooRii.
khiRkii TuuTii thii.
rumaal phaTee.
rumaal badlii diiee.

p. 245

1. mujh-koo bahot kaam thaa. is liiee mujh-koo xaalii uakt thaa. F
2. sauua čhai bajee-see sauua saat-tak eek ghanTaa hootaa hai. T
3. loog kabhii apnee juutee nahī pahentee hai. F
4. xazaančii-kaa kaam khaanaa lee jaanaa hai. F
5. kučh loog šaam-koo saaRhee pāāč bajee apnaa kaam xatam
'kartee hai. T
6. tumhaaraa juutaa phaTaa huuaa hai kiōō-kee ice naiaa hai. F
7. agar tuufaan na-hootaa too aččhaa hootaa. F
8. mǎi hindustaan-see amriikaa jahaaz-mēē aaiaa. agar mǎi
hauuaai jahaaz-see aataa too ziaadaa uakt lagtaa. F

9. loog apnii mooTar kabhii nahii čalaaatee. F
10. geehū daraxt-par paidaa hootaa hai. F
11. jis zamiin-par phuul paidaa hootee hāi, us-koo baag kah^{tee} hāi. T
12. kiōō-kee uoō soo rahaa thaa, is liēē us-nee ham-koo deekhaa. F
13. Taihifuun-kii marammat karnaa kaarigar-kaa kaam hai. T
14. sab loog čuTⁱⁱōō-mēē saxt kaam kartee hāi. F
15. agar meeree paas ghooRaa hootaa, too māi sauaarī kar saktaa. T
16. joo loog kheetii kartee hāi un-koo kisaan nahii kah^{tee}. F
17. agar tum ziaadaa khaaoō, too peeT-mee dard hoo-gaa. T
18. joo loog amriikaa-mēē rah^{tee} hāi un-koo hindustaanii kah^{tee} hāi. F
19. jis kamiiz-mēē daag hai us-koo dhoonee-kij zaruurat hai. T
20. agar dhoobii kamiiz na-dhootaa, too iee mailii hootii. T
21. loog moozee sir-par pahentee hāi. F
22. agar aap apnaa pataa deetee too mujh-koo maalum hootaa kee aap kahāā rah^{tee} hāi. T
23. agar tum ček tuRaanaa čah^{tee} hoo too bank-koo jaaoō. T
24. agar tumbaaree paas tiin Toopiāā hōō aur eek khoo jaatee, too doo rah^{tee} jaatii hāi. T
25. agar tumbaarii mooTar xaraab hoo, too hajjaam-koo bulaaoō. F
26. sab kisaan amiir hootee hāi. F
27. agar tum biimaar hoo too aspataal jaaoō. T
28. joo aadmii meeree bahen-see šaadii karee, us-koo uaaldain kah^{tee} hāi. F
29. jab ček tuRaanaa čahoo, too rumaal istemaal karoo. F
30. dukaan-kaa intezaam naukarōō-kee haath-mēē hai. F
31. tambaakuu-see rooTii banaatee hāi. F
32. naukar maalik-see ziaadaa amiir hootee hāi. F
33. juutee-kii saabun-see marammat kartee hāi. F
34. baččee miThaaii pasand kartee hai. T
35. agar kisii-kii daauat karēē, too meh^{na}an-koo paisaa deenaa paRtaa hai. F
36. agar aap-koo kooii toh^{fa}a dee, too us-koo šukriiaa kah^{na}a čah^{ti}ee. T
37. paunee pāāč bajee-see sauua pāāč bajee-tak doo ghanTee hootee hāi. F

38. kiõð-kee aap-koo amriikaa bahot pasand hai, is liice aap
hindustaan-koo uaapas jaanaa nahiĩ čaah-tee. T F
39. tuufaan-kee uakt hauaa aahestaa čaltii hai. F
40. agar mooTar TuuT jaaee, too darzii-kee paas lee jaasoo. uoo
Thiik kar dee-gaa. F
41. meeraa juutaa kabhii nahiĩ phaT jaaee-gaa. F
42. joo dauaaji kaRuui hai, uoo biimaarðð-kee liice aččhii nahiĩ. F
43. samandar-mėē tuufaan saxt hootee hāi. T
44. kooii loogðð-koo jaarēe-kaa buxaar kabhii nahiĩ aataa. T
45. toh'fee amriikaa-mėē nahiĩ deetee. F
46. Takkar khaanaa aččhii baat nahiĩ. T
47. khaanee-kii dukaan-kaa intezaam dhoobiiðð-kee haath-mėē
hai. F
48. kučh dukaanoo-mėē ček tooRtee hai. T
49. baal kaTaañee-mee paisaa lagtaa hai. T
50. giiaarhuu saRak dasui aur teerhuu-kee darmiiaan hoo-gaa. T
51. mooTar ziaadaa teez čalaanee-mėē xatraa hai. T
52. jis kāmiz-mėē čheed hai uoo kaTaanaa čaahiice. F
53. pathun-kii istrii karnee-kee liice dauaai-kii zarurat hai. F
54. sab DaakTar biimaar loogðð-kee baal kaTaatee hai. F
55. hindustaan dilčasp nahiĩ. F
56. ghooRē čaaee nahiĩ piitee. T
57. joo kheetðð-mee tambaakuu paidaa hootaa hai, us-par bahot
daraxt hootee hāi. F
58. amriikan loog čaaee-mėē miThaaui Daaltee hāi. F
59. amriikan loog kabhii kabhii čaaee piitee hāi. T
60. uardii-mėē čheed aur daag na-hoonaa čaahiice. T
61. joo loog aspatal-mėē kaam kartee hai, uoo biimaar hāi. F
62. gaaē sauarii-kee liice aččhii nahiĩ. T
63. gaaRii čalaaneuuaalee loogðð-koo rišteedaar kah-tee hāi. F
64. xazaančii loog amiir hootee hāi. F
65. DeeRh Daalar aur DeeRh Daalar tiin Daalar hootee hāi. T
66. sab biimaar loog hameešaa sootee hāi. F
67. agar meeree paas ziaadaa paisaa hootaa, too ziaadaa čiižēē
xarid saktāa. T
68. sab gharðð-mee Tailifuun hāi. F
69. loog Toopiiāā sir-par pahentee hāi. F
70. miThaaui kaRuui hai. T

71. ček-kee uupar naam likhnaa čaahiiee. T
72. uoo eek mahinee-see naee ghar-měe rah'taa hai. is liiee joo
pataa tum-koo guzree saal diiaa uoo Thiik nahii. T
73. agar tuufaan hoo too šaaed samandar safar karnaa muškil hoo. T
74. mooTrěe kheet-měe paidaa hootii hāi. F
75. gaeee moozee nahii pahentii. T
76. jab juutee phaTee hoo too darzii-kee paas lee jaao. F
77. biimaar loog ziaadaa-tar kamzoor hootee hāi. T
78. joo loog mausam bardaašt nahii kar saktee, uoo mausam
pasand kartee hāi. F
79. kaariigar juutaa pahentee hāi. T
80. biimaar loog saxt kaam nahii kar saktee. T

p. 245: I (44 F; 36 T)

1. māi soolhuūi saRak-koo kis taraa jaaū. T
2. uoo doo jooRee juutee xariidiiee. T
3. duusrō-kii marammat karaaiiee. T
4. tum is mahiinee-měe kitnii dafaa miloo-gee. T
5. uoo bičaraa biimaarii-kee baad pah'lii dafaa baahar jaa
rahaa hai. T
6. māi in-see maamulii juutee ziaadaa pasand kartaa hū. T
7. too ham un-koo čauthii dafaa daauāt dēe-gee. T
8. is-koo tum abhii pahenna šuruu karoo. T

II

1. meeraa doost aččhii taraa nahii samjhaa. T
2. mujh-koo guzree saal hindustaan-měe jaaRee-kaa buxaar huuaa. T
3. DaakTar-nee mujh-koo sab čüzěe khaanee-kii jjaazat nahii dii. T
4. gaaRii uakt-par nahii chuuTii. T
5. ham mahiinee-měe doo dafaa miltee thee. T
6. aap phir uaapas nahii aae. T
7. kiaa aap-koo jahaaz-měe safar karnee-see kučh faaeda huuaa ? T
8. aam taur-par uoo meeree liiee hindustaan-see laRaaii-kee pah'lee
toh'fee laae. T

III

1. kiaa aap mooTar čalaanaa jaantee hāi ? T
2. kal māi-nee apnii mooTar kučh gaaiō-see Takkar khaai. T

3. mǎi-nee apnii mooTar marammat karnee-kii koošiš kii.
4. kisaan-nee ham-koo apnaa ghar aur jaanuar dikhaaee.
5. uoo bahot makaaii paidaa kartee thee.
6. mǎi-nee bilkul tambaakuu nahii piiaa.
7. uoo meerii mooTar čalaa rahee thee.
8. uoo hamaaree paas eek dataa aae.

IV

1. aap-kaa dhoobii kaun-sii jagaa-see hai.
2. kiaa iee uoo hajjaam hai joo hamešaa aataa hai?
3. iee uoo Toopii pahentaa hai joo mǎi-nee us-koo dii.
4. uoo dastuur-kee mutaabik ziaadaa khaataa hai.
5. joo pathluun mǎi dhoobii-kee paas lee gaiiaa thaa, us-měe čheed hai.
6. tum uohii hajjaam nahii hoo, jis-ner meeree baal guzree mahiinee kaaTee.
7. iee uohii moozaa hai joo khoo gaiiaa thaa.
8. jin moožōō-měe daag hai, un-koo dhoōōo.

V

1. agar tum jaantee kee mǎi kaun hūū, too tum mujhee sauaaal na-puūčtee.
2. tirpan-měe-see unniis kam čautiis hootee hāi.
3. kiaa aap-nee kal ham-koo šaher-mee deekhaa thaa?
4. meeraa xiaal hai kee ham un-kii madad kar saktee agar uoo karēē joo ham čaah-tee hāi.
5. eek gaahak-nee mujh-koo eek pačaaš rupae-kaa nooT diiaa. mǎi-nee aziiz-see puūčhaa, leekin mǎi us-koo tuRaa nahii sakaa.
6. maaf kiijiee, mǎi us-koo tooR nahii sačtaa, leekin mǎi us-koo aap-kee liiee tuRaaū-gaa.
7. iee Toopii aap-kee naee kap Rōō-kee upar Thiik nahii lagee-gii.
8. agar aap rešam-koo beeč deetee, too ab aap takliif-měe na-hootee.

p 247: 2

- | | |
|-----------|-------|
| 1. b | 6. c |
| 2. b | 7. a |
| 3. c | 8. c |
| 4. a or c | 9. b |
| 5. a | 10. b |

p. 248: I

1. mujh-see saaRhee giaaraa bajee miliíee.
2. uoo meere kapRee pahen rahaa hai.
3. aaThuéé darjee-tak lifT-méé caléé aur phir nauuée-tak paidal
 čaléé.
4. íee pah'lii dafaa hai jab mǎi apnee kapRóó-kii marammat karaa
 rahaa hūū.
5. meeraa xiaal hai kee íee šaher duniāā-méé sab-see xuubsuurat hai.
6. kīaa aap xazaančii-koo jaantee hǎi?
7. is jagaa-kee naukar subhāa-kee paunee doo bajee kaam karnāa
 xatam kartee hǎi.

II

1. meeréé rištedaar toh'fee laatee thee.
2. mǎi us mulk-koo bardaašt nahīi kar saktaa.
3. DaakTar-koo dauaaii-kee faaedee-mee kooii dilčaspīi nahīi thīi.
4. aab-o-hauaa-see uoo bahot saxt biimaar hoo gaiāa.
5. kapRee meez-see giree.
6. aččhīi dauaaiiāā aam taur-par kaRuii hǎi.
7. uahāā-par thoóRīi deer rahnaa mumkin nahīi thāa.
8. us-koo rištedaaróó-koo ghar lee jaanee-kii ijāazat thīi.

III

1. kīaa aap-nee itnii uakt-mee kučh kīiāa?
2. mai šaher-koo mooTar-mee jaaneeuaalaa hūū. kīaa aap meere
 saath jaanaa čaah'tee hai?
3. phalóó-koo baag-méé paidaa karnee-kee líee kis čīiz-kīi zaruurat
 hai.
4. baččóó-nee sab miThaaii khāa dii.
5. mǎi-nee sunaa kee zamiin is taraf bahot aččhīi hai. kīaa íee
 Thiik hai?
6. íee kučh čīizóó-kee líee Thiik hai, aur kučh-kee líee xaraab.
7. kīaa tambaakuu-kee kheet-kee piūčhee-kīi zamiin aap-kīi hai?
8. čalaaneeuaalee-nee mujh-koo bulāaiāa.

p. 249: IV

1. íee kis-kīi Toopīi hai. meerīi nahīi.
2. íee uohīi pathluun hǎi jin-kīi baabat mǎi-nee kal šīkaaet kīi thīi.

3. aap-kii ziaadaa teez čalaanee-kii aadat hai.
4. iee tum-nee kis-koo bataaiaa.
5. uoo us dhoobii-kaa intezaar kar rahaa thaa jis-nee uoo braun
pathun istrii kiiee thee.
6. tum-nee iee kis darzii-koo diiaa thaa.
7. jab tum-nee iee kahaa too mǎi bahot xuš huuaa.
8. joo pataa mǎi-nee diiaa uoo galat thaa.

V

1. agar iee aslii reešam hootii, too na-phaTtii.
2. agar tum aččhaa saabun istemaal karoo, too nahii phaTš-gee.
3. agar mǎi aap-koo eek ček dūū, too kiaa aap mujh-koo nakad
paisaa dš-gee ?
4. maalik kovii čiz udhaar nahii deetaa.
5. agar uoo aap-koo jaantaa hai, too uoo aap-kaa ček tooRee-gaa.
6. agar iee čhooTaa ček hootaa, too mǎi is-koo zaruur kartaa.
7. unhō-nee iee rumaal kal badlii diiee.
8. agar tum iee rumaal beečoo, too tum bahot aččhee dukandaar hoo.

2

1. hoonee- . . .
2. jis . . . us . . .
3. . . . nikaaltaa . . .
4. jin . . . uoo . . .
5. jis . . . -nee . . . uoo . . .
6. xaridoo.
7. joo . . . uoo . . .
8. . . . hootii.
9. kar(tee) . . .
10. hai.

p. 260: 1

1. us-kaa naam fatiimaa thaa.
2. us-kee paas eek naukār thaa.
3. us-kaa naam husain thaa.
4. us-měe pleeT, piaalee, čamčee, čhurišš, aur kḡḡTee rakh diiee.
5. nahū. us-nee joo pleeT baauarčixaanee-měe thee uoo liiee.
6. nahū. daruasaas khulaa rakhaa.

7. kiõõ-kee us-mée kuč harj nahü.
8. *Nora*-nee Daalii.
9. jii. šakkar liiaa.
10. miThaaii amriikaa-see aaii thii
11. kahaa kee jab čhoo Tii-sii thii, mää-nee uoo miThaaii banaaii thii.
12. abhii-tak aččaa nahü.
13. joo kuč khaataa hai uoo kae kartaa hai.
14. hakim-kee paas lee, jaee-gii.
15. čhurii kaa Tnee-kee liiee hai.
16. us-koo baauarčixaanaa kah'tee hāi.
17. (Have you ever tried painting?)

p. 261

18. (Do soldiers get special food?)
19. (Is the window open in this room?)
20. (Where is the rug?)
21. kamree-kii aam taur-par čaar diuaarée hāi.
22. (How do you feel?)

2

1. gaaRii kab čhuuTee-gii.
2. jab gaaRii čhuuTee too mai ghar jaaüü-gaa.
3. aap kahāā jaa rahee hai.
4. jahāā aap jaee, uahāā māi bhii jaaüü-gaa.
5. meere baap iahāā rah'tee hāi.
6. jitnaa paisaa aap čaah'tee hāi utnaa māi dee nahü saktaa.
7. jaisee aadmii-koo aap-nee deekhaa, uaisaa is gaaõõ-mée nahü rah'taa.
8. māt-nee is kisim-kii baat kabhii nahü sunaa.
9. meez-par kitnii kitaabée hāi.
10. māi nahü jaantaa kee is xat-koo kis-see likhaa.
11. jis aadmii-nee ice xat bheejaa uoo meeraa doost nahü.

p. 274: 1

1. šimlaa pahaaRõõ-par hai.
2. šimlee-kaa mausam bahot aččaa hai.
3. nahü. sirf garmii-mée.

4. bahot duur nahii.
5. hindustaan-kee uttar hai.
6. kilaa, mandir, masjidēē hāi.
7. hāā. gangaa-par hai.
8. akbar baadšāah-nee banuaiaa.
9. farak̄ ɛe hai kee hinduu loog mandir-mēē, isaaɪ loog girjee-mēē
ibaadat kartee hai.
10. musalmaan loog masjid-mēē ibaadat kartee hāi.
11. nahii. isaaɪ loog kam hāi.
12. nahii. hindustaan-kii aabaadii amrikaa-see baRii hai.
13. is-mēē čaar ghanTee lagtee hāi.
14. nahii. uttar-mēē hāi.
15. tiirath-kee liiee jaatee hai.
16. un-kaa etkaad ɛe hai kee baikunth-mēē jaaēē-gee.

2

1. eek-hii kitaab-koo paRhTEE hāi.
2. usii rang-kaa kooT čaahTaa hūū.
3. usii jagaa gaii.
4. us-koo uohii dauaai milii.
5. ham eek-hii loogō-koo pasand kartee hāi.
6. eek-hii loog har ituaar mulaakaat kartee hāi.
7. meeree baap usii girjee-koo jaatee hāi.
8. uohii khiRkii TuuTii thii.
9. unhii aadmiiō-nee bheejaa.
10. nadii-par kitnii naauēē hai.
11. un tiin naaōō-kaa kitnaa paisaa lēē-gee.
12. kīaa hindustaan-mēē bahot raajaa loog hai?
13. māt-nee čaččaa-koo mulaakaat kīīaa.
14. uoo bahot raajaaōō-koo jaantaa hai.
15. māt-nee deootaa-kii suurat kabhii nahii deekhii.

p. 286: 1

1. . . . baaiāa . . .
2. . . . baaēē . . .
3. . . . dahnee (daaēē) . . . baaiāa . . .
4. . . . gaanaa . . .
5. . . . gaanee . . .

6. . . . gaa . . .
7. . . . gaanee . . .
8. . . . khaanaa . . .
9. . . . jaanee . . .
10. . . . jaanee . . .

2

1. raat-see uahāā thaa.
2. saRak-kee baazuun-par paaiāa.
3. uo beehooš thaa.
4. nahī. us-kii jeeb-mēē bahot paisaa thaa.
5. Dar thaa kee šaaed kooii šaxs us-kaa paisaa čuraace.
6. nahī. aasaan na-thaa.
7. kah'nee lagaa kee mujhee iahāā rah'nee doo, aur laRnee lagaa.
8. laRnee-kii uajaa-see mukadmaa hoo-gaa.
9. jurm bahot saxt nahī thaa.
10. iee kaanuun-kee xilaaf hai.
11. sipaahii-koo (*Jack-koo*) Tāāg-mee kučh čhooT lagū.
12. us-nee kahaa kee sab sač sač kah* doo aur kučh jhuuT na-booloo.

p. 302: 1

1. bandar eek seeb-kee peeR-par rah'taa thaa.
2. apnee-doost-koo deekhnee-kee liiee jaaiāa kartaa thaa.
3. jii. bahot miThee thee.
4. apnee biuii-kee liiee laataa thaa.
5. jii. uoo khaa-kar bahot xuš huuii.
6. kahaa kee teeree doost-kaa dil bahot miThaa hoo-gaa. māi uoo
khaanaa čaah'tii hūū.
7. jii. biuii-kaa kah'naa sunaa.
8. bandar-kii daauat kii.
9. bandar magar-kii piTh-par baith gaiaa.
10. magar-nee roo roo-kar saaraa kissaa kah* diiaa.
11. kahaa kee ai doost. tuu bahot naadaan hai.
12. dil daraxt-par čhipaiaa.
13. kahaa kee dil kisii-nee čuraa liiaa.
14. magar apnii biuii-koo itnii mahobbat kartaa thaa kee us-kii baat
maanna paRaa.

1. baahar jaa-kar us-koo bulaaiaa.
2. kaam xatam kar-kee ghar gaiaa.
3. kitaab paRh-kar čhooR dii.
4. paisaa lee-kar mujhee bheejaa.
5. šaraab pii-kar būmaar hoo gaeē.
6. gaanee-koo sun-kar bahot xuš huuaa.
7. nahaa-kar sooliaa.
8. baiTh jaa-kar ham-see baatčiit kii.
9. mooTar Thiik banaa-kar gaiaa.
10. šaher-koo jaa-kar naaTak deekheē.
11. tasuiir lee-kar čhipaaee.
12. us-koo bulaa-kar kahēē kee ham iahaa hāi.
13. hauaañi jahaaz-see jaa-kar subaa-mēē pāh•čēē-gee.
14. ghar xariid-kar iahāā rahēē-gee.
15. roonee lag-kar maafi māāñii.
16. paisaa xarč kar-kee uaapas gaeē.
17. aap khaanee-kee liie kab aae-gee
tum khaanee-kee liie kab aao-gee.
tuu khaanee-kee liie kab aee-gaa.
18. kiaa aap-nee is aadmii-koo jaanaa ?
kiaa tum-nee is aadmii-koo jaanaa ?
kiaa tuu-nee is aadmii-koo jaanaa ?

p. 303

19. us uaḡt aap kahāā rahee.
us uaḡt tum 'kahāā rahee.
us uaḡt tuu kahāā rahaa.
20. aap-kee kitnee bhaaii hāi.
tumbaarec kitnee bhaaii hāi.
teeree kitnee bhaaii hāi.
21. iee paani mat-pūñjee.
iee paani mat-piioo.
iee paani mat-pii.
22. aap-nee kabñi nahū kahaa.
tum-nee kabñi nahū kahaa.
tuu-nee kabñi nahū kahaa.
23. agar aap kahāā rahēē, too māi tasuiir dikhaaū-gaa.

- agar tum iahāā rahoo, too tum-koo tasuuir dikhaaūū-gaa.
 agar tuu iahāā rahee, too tujh-koo tasuuir dikhaaūū-gaa.
24. kiaa aap-kee paas kooii naḳd paisaa hai ?
 kiaa tumhaarē paas kooii naḳd paisaa hai ?
 kiaa teerē paas kooii naḳd paisaa hai ?
25. agar aap meerii raee suntee, too ab iahāā na-hootē.
 agar tum meerii raee suntaa, too ab iahāā na-hootē.
 agar tuu meerii raee suntaa, too ab iahāā na-hootaa.
26. jis jagaa aap gae, kiaa uo iahāā-see bahot duur hai ?
 jis jagaa tum gae, kiaa uo iahāā-see bahot duur hai ?
 jis jagaa tuu gae, kiaa uo iahāā-see bahot duur hai ?
27. bataaiē kee aap-kee ualdain kahāā rah*tee hāi.
 bataao kee tumhaarē ualdain kahāā rah*tee hāi.
 bataa kee teerē ualdain kahāā rah*tee hāi.
28. māi jaannaa Ḍaaht*taa hūū agar aap bhii aaēē-gee.
 māi jaannaa Ḍaaht*taa hūū agar tum bhii aaoo-gee.
 māi jaannaa Ḍaaht*taa hūū agar tuu bhii aaeē-gaa.
29. ghar aap-nee kiōō nahū bheej diiaa.
 ghar tum-nee kiōō nahū bheej diiaa.
 ghar tuu-nee kiōō nahū bheej diiaa.

p. 313: 1

1. nahū. sirf hissaa.
2. uahāā raajaōō aur nauaābōō-kaa raaj hai.
3. giaaraa suubōō-mee hai.
4. hāā. siloon aur barmaa hindustaan-mēē thee
5. hindustaan-ki aabaadii Ḍaaliis karooR hai.
6. bambaii, karāāḌii, madraas.
7. barmee-see sab-see nazdiḳ hindustaan-kaa bandar-gaah ḌITTa-gang hai.
8. himaalīaa hai.
9. hindustaan-mēē ziaadaa hinduu hāi.
10. hindustaanii, bangaalii, gujraatii, uagairaa.
11. hindustaan-kee uttar-mēē.
12. kiōō-kee barmee-see Ḍaauaal nahū aataa.
13. (What is the Viceroy's name ?)
14. abhii kuḌ hissaa ḳabzee-mēē nahū.
15. (guzrii) laRaaii-mēē šuruu-see aaiaa.

16. (How many men are in the Indian army ?)
17. nahū. kuč muxtalif hāi.
18. farak iee hai kee Toopii-kee bajaase pagRii, aur moozōō-kii uajaa paTTii pahentee hāi.
19. banduuk aur kukrii iaa čhunii.
20. jii hāā. bahot loog beepaRhee hāi.
21. hukum angreezii-mēē hāi.
22. kukrii čhunii-kii taraa hai.
23. hāā. sikh loog fauj-kaa kaam pasand kartee hāi.
24. uarziš karnaa, ɣauased karnaa, banduuk čalaanaa.
25. hindustaan-mēē makaaii, geehūū, uagairaa paidaa hootaa hai.

2

1 : 7	7 : 4
2 : 8	8 : 2
3 : 9	9 : 3
4 : 6	10 : 1
5 : 10	11 : 5
6 : 11	

1st Conversation

Mrs. A.: duusree naukarōō-koo bataaoo kee meezēē lagaaēē aur kamraa taiiaar karēē. daas baabuu apnee baal-baččōō-kee saath aa rahee hāi.

Husein: kīaa gilaas meez-par lagaaūū iaa piaalee ?

Mrs. A.: jitnee aadmii hāi, utnee piaalee lagaaoo. tiin meh'maan hōō-gee.

Husein: kīaa māi baaguaalaa daruaazaa khulaa rakhūū ?

Mrs. A.: nahū. deekhoo, joo tasuuir daas baabuu-nee khiīčii diusaar-par zaruur laTkaaoo.

2nd Conversation

Das: afsoos hai, leekin aap-kaa ček tuRaanaa mumkin nahū. bank-mēē nahū tooRtee. kīaa aap-koo is šaheer-mee beopaar nahū ?

Azi: jii. meeree paas doo beopaar hāi, eek is šaheer-mee hāi, aur duusraa banaaras-mēē.

Das: too kiaa huuaa?

Aziz: Dar hai kee meeree bhaai-nee beopaar-kee paisaa istemaal kiaa, aur bank-par kučh hamaaraa paisaa nahī. pah^{le} aisee kiiaa thaa.

Das: afsoos-kii baat. kiaa kooii duusree rištedaar hai?

Aziz: jii. meeraa eek jaaan bhatijaa thaa, leekin uo guzree saal mar gaiia.

3rd Conversation

Jim: ai Joe. tum jeel-mee kis taraa hoo.

Joe: mujhee maalum nahī. šaher-mēe eek ghanTaa aanee-kee baad, mujh-koo giraftaar kiiaa. mī-nee kučh nahī kiia thaa. mī-nee sirf kučh šaraab pii thii.

Jim: kiaa tum-koo kooii uakiil nahī mil saktaa?

Joe: uoo mujh-koo kooii uakiil-see milnaa nahī deetee. leekin mī mukadme-see nahī Dartaa.

Jim: šaaed tum-koo kuch jurmaanaa deenaa paRee. kiaa mī tum-koo kučh paisee udhaar dū?

Joe: nahī. meeree paas kaafii paisee hai.

Jim: salaam.

4th Conversation

eek bandar jis-kaa naam kaagzii thaa aur eek magar joo magar-kee kariib rahtaa thaa bahot doost thee. bandar-koo magar-nee daauat kii, aur us-kee piiTh-par nadii-ke paar gaiia. jab nadii-kee bič-mēe thee, magar-nee kahaa kee ai doost. teeraa dil kahā hai. meerii biuii us-koo khaanaa čaahtii hai. bandar-nee kahaa kee meeraa dil too hamečšaa-kii taraa seeb-kee peeR-ke upar laTkaa huuaa hai. aao uapas jaaē. aur magar-kii biuii-koo bandar-kee di-kii jagaa-mēe sirf maamulii khaanaa khaanaa paRaa.

5th Conversation

amriikaa-kū aabaadii čaudaa karoR hai. pah^{le} amriikan apnii xušii-see fauj-mee bhartii hotee thee, leekin us-ke baad un-koo zabardastii bhartii hoanaa paRtaa hai. fauj-mee daaxil hoonee-ke liie sirf ačchi tabiat-kii zaruurat hai.

afsar aur sipaahii saRak-par bagair Toopii-ke nahī jaa sakte. amriikan laRaai-kee jahaaz fauj-ke mičee nahī hotee. uo xaaas hai.

Here are the answers to the questions on p. 320:

1

1. naukar hai.
2. daas baabuu-nee.
3. tiin.
4. hāā.
5. maaluum nahī.

2

1. maaluum nahī.
2. doo beopaar hāi.
3. Dar hai kee bhaai beopaar istemaal kartaa hai.
4. sirf bhaaii.
5. bhatijaa mar gaiaa.

3

1. sirf kuch šaraab pii thii.
2. eek ghanTee-see.
3. us-koo milnee na-diaa.
4. hāā.
5. šaaed jurmaanaa hoo.

4

1. kaagzi.
2. hāā.
3. magari-kee piiT-par.
4. seeb-kaa.
5. sirf maamujii khaanaa.

5

1. Čaudaa karooR.
2. nahī.
3. sirf aččhii tabūat.
4. saRak-par.
5. nahī. xaas hāi.

p. 321

1. tum-koo utnaa paisaa leena paRee-gaa jitnaa māi-nee liia.
2. mandir aur masjid-mēē kiaa farak hai.

3. DipTii-kii raaee sunoo.
4. is diuaar-mée meeree haath jitnaa baRaa čheed hai.
5. mǎi is piaalee-mée pah'lee piaalee jítinii šakkar lúu-gaa.
6. meeraa čáččaa usii ghar-mée rah'taa hai.
7. uoo haathaa-paaii karnee lagaa.
8. bijlii-kii batti jal rahii hai.
9. kǐaa tum kahaanii sunnaa čaah'tee hoo ?
10. uoo usii taraa tasuiir kǎi'č'taa hai jis taraa uoo us-koo iskuul-mée
bataatee hǎi.
11. masjid-mée kooii tasuiir ǐaa muurat nahii hootii.
12. hinduu gangaa-mee nahaatee hǎi.
13. hauaaéé ǐahǎá teež hǎi.
14. daaroogaa-nee kisii uakiil-koo giraf'taar kiíee huúee aadmii-see
milnee-kii ǐjaazat na-dii.
15. tum-koo saRak-kee dah'nii taraf čalaanee-par jurmaanaa hoo-
gaa.
16. mai itnaa xuš thaa kee us-koo mǎi sau Daalar deetaa.
17. hindustaan-mée ziaadaa aččhii bandar-gaahée nahii hǎi.
18. čaar-mée-see eek aadmii hindustaanii samaj'taa hai.
19. us-nee maafii máāgi.
20. aap-kaa kaun-saa xiaal hai.
21. siloon-kaa hindustaan-kee uaaesraae-see kuč taalluk nahii.
22. bandar-nee magari-see kahaa kee mǎi teeree lííee ǐee karhū ?
23. tum-nee kít'naa paisaa jamaa kǐiaa.
24. hindustaan-mée abhii-tak bahot beepaRhee loog hǎi.
25. amrikaa-mée kuč aurtée pagRii jaisii Toopii(āā) pahentii hǎi.

p. 322

1. meeree xiaal-mée kisii jagaa aag jal rahii hai.
2. is šaher-see bambaii-kii aabaadii čaar-gunii hai.
3. kaun-see pleeT meez-par hǎi.
4. tasuiirée eek duusrii-kee uupar laTak jaaée.
5. duusree piaalee-mée Daaloo.
6. hindustaan-koo uaapas jaanee-kaa ǐraadaa hai ?
7. hindustaan-kee sirf eek čhooTaa hissaa jaapaaniúó-kee kabzee-
mée thaa.
8. kǐaa tum usii naaóó-see uaapas jaaée-gee ?
9. kǐaa aap doonóó eek-hii beopaar-mee kaam kartee thee ?

10. iew banduuk meeri-kii taraa dikhtii hai, leekin muxtalif kisim-kii hai.
11. ham eek duusree-kee saath iskuul-koo aur iskuul-see čalaiaa kartee thee.
12. iew doo riaastēē takriiban baraabar hāi.
13. kisii-nee paisaa čuraiaa.
14. jitiŋi čhuriāā aur kāāTee lee saktee hāi, utnii lee loo aur kooii mat-giraao.
15. meeraa bhatiijaa kisii loogōō-see jin-koo us-nee nahii jaanaa laRnee lagaa.
16. *Mr. Smith* kisii kisim-kaa beopaar kabhii nahii intezaam kartaa thaa.
17. uoo apnee doostōō-kee liiee jurmaanee diiaa kartaa thaa jab kabhii uoo musiibat-mēē thee.
18. aap-kee xāāuind-nee kahaa kee aap naaraaz hāi.
19. māi maafii māāgneeuāalaa huū.
20. naipaal hindustaan-kee uttar-mēē eek xaas riaasat hai.
21. us-koo daaroogaa-nee jeel-mēē band kiaa.
22. us-nee too kučh xaraabii na-kii.
23. us čhooTee laRkee-kee saath kiaa takliif hai.
24. gaaōō-kee baniīē-see kahnee mujhee dee dēē.
25. iew imaarat kučh masjid-kii taraa dikhtii hai. daruaazee aur khiRkiāā uohii hāi.

p. 323: 2

1. eek . . .
2. usii . . .
3. jitiŋaa . . .
4. kahnee . . .
5. hāi.
6. karoo (*kiaa, etc.*) . . .
7. piiaa . . .
8. gaiiaa . . .
9. čaččaa-see . . .
10. kiŋnii . . .

p. 331: 1

1. (How often did the telephone ring before I came home?)
2. (Which number did you call?)

3. (How do I get the right number ?)
4. (How many telephones are there in his office ?)
5. (What do I do if I get the wrong number ?)
6. (When my father comes home, at what number should he call you ?)
7. (Shall I call again some time, or shall I wait for them to call ?)
8. (*Did you not forget to deliver the message ?*)
9. jii hāā taar bheejnaa mäh'gaa nahii.
10. hindustaan-mēē, taar bheejnee-kee liice Daakxaanee-koo jaatee hāi.
11. uo teež jaataa hai.
12. jis aadmii-koo xat miltaa hai, uo paisaa deetaa hai.
13. amriikaa-mēē sipaahiiō-koo TikiT nahii Čaahiice.
14. kučh saal-see.
15. (How big is this bundle ?)
16. (What are the regulations with regard to weight ?)
17. maamulii čiTThiāā din-mēē sirf doo aur tiin dafaa aatii hāi.
18. (Do you get more letters than you send ?)
19. nahii. čiTThiāā mäh'gii hāi.
20. (What are the air mail regulations with regard to the size of packages ?)
21. māi-nee uzan kiiāa.

2

1. mat-la Tkaaoo.
2. Daakxaanee-mēē intezaar karoo.
3. pāāč aanee-see ziaadaa lagtaa hai.
4. eek rupace-kaa TikiT aap-koo Čaahiice.
5. us-kii doo saal-kii tanxuaah tiin hazaar rupace hāi.
6. pāāč din-see bhuukaa hūū.
7. kitnii ČhaTāāk hāi.
8. pāāč miil-see kam lambaa hai.

3

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. c | 4. c |
| 2. b | 5. a |
| 3. b | 6. a |

p. 346: 1

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. kisaan . . . | have plenty of animals |
| 2. aap-kee beeTee . . . | wrote this letter |
| 3. laRaaii-kaa . . . | where is the |
| 4. aurat . . . | wept |
| 5. sipaahii . . . | will have to go |
| 6. eek gilaas . . . | I want a glass of wine |

2

1. murdee kučh din-see iahāā hai.
2. mujhee kučh ghanTee-tak khaRaa hoonaa paRaa.
3. koošiš karnee-par bhii us-koo bačaa na-sakee.

p. 347

4. eek baRee afsar zaxmiiōō-koo mulaakaat karēē-gee.
5. haalāā-kee uoo kabhii nahī hāstaa, leekin phir bhii uoo xušmizaaj
aadmii hai.
6. goolii us-kee dahṛnee haath-par lagii, leekin haDDii nahī
TuTii.
7. us-kaa čehṛaa jal gaiaa, leekin xudaa-kii meherbaanii-see us-kee
āakhōō-koo kučh na-huuaa.
8. haalāā-kee uoo āādhēe hāi, leekin phir bhii uoo aččaa kaam kar
saktee hāi.
9. māi is-mahollee-mēē eek saal-see nahī aaiaa.
10. tum kab-see bahṛee hoo.
11. tum kab-see iahāā rahṛee hoo.
12. mai ziaadaa deer-tak na-rah^e sakūū-gaa, haalāā-kee māi čaahṛtaa
hūū.
13. uoo kahṛtaa hai kee us-koo saaraa din čakkar aaee.
14. DaakTar goolii nikaalnee-kii koošiš karēē-gee.
15. uoo kahṛtee hāi kee gooli kučh uakṭ-tak baahar niklee-gii.
16. hamlee-see bahot nuksaan na-huuaa, haalāā-kee bahot šoor
huuaa.

p. 359: 1

1. a
2. c

3. b
4. b

p. 360

5. b
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. b
10. c

2

1. maartaul, aarii, kulhaaRii uagairaa.
2. jis-nee kučh xariidaa, us-kaa hai.
3. maartaul lakRii aur dhaat-kaa banaa hai.
4. khiilō-kii zaruurat hai.
5. nadii-kaa paanii bahṭaa hai.
6. un-koo jaal-see pakaRṭee hai.
7. us-kaa matlab “safe” hai.
8. paanii-mēē rahṭii hāi.

p. 361

9. naḱṣee-mēē saRkēē, imaartēē, nadiiāā, uagairaa, khiṭṭii jaatii hāi.
10. iṭTēē zamin-see banii hāi.
11. amriikaa-mēē imaartēē patthar, iṭT, aur dhaat-see banii hāi.
12. amriikaa-kii doo hadēē hai, uttar-mēē aur dakḱhin-mēē.
13. gudaam imaarat hai jis-mēē sab ḱisim-kii ṭiizēē rakḱii jaatii hāi.

3

1. . . . bheejnee-kee liie . . .
2. . . . bheejnaa . . .
3. . . . khoodnee-mēē . . .
4. . . . jiiṭnee-kii . . .
5. . . . ṣāraab-kaa milnaa (or ṣāraab milnaa) . . .
6. . . . ghar(-kee) banuaanee-kaa . . .

p. 374: 1

1. hästee hästee . . .
2. *khaatee khaatee* . . .
3. . . . kartee kartee . . .
4. . . . gaatee gaatee . . .
5. . . . sootee sootee . . .
6. . . . duusrîi duusrîi . . .
7. muxtalif muxtalif . . .
8. . . . apnee apnee . . .
9. . . . baiThaa huuaa . . .

2

1. muxtalif kisim-kee kheel kheeltee kheeltee uakt guzaartee hâi.

p. 375

2. jab mâi baiTh gaiaa, ghanTii bajii.
3. daruaazaa aasaanii-see nahii khul jaataa hai, aur jab khulaa hai,
band karnaa mumkin nahii.
4. har raat apnee kapRee kursii-par laTkaataa hai.
5. har eek duusree duusree ghar-koo jaave.
6. ham paarii-paarii-mêe mooTar calaaê.
7. šart har eek kheel-mêe baraabar nahii.
8. kučh taš-kee kheelôo-mêe hušiaarii-kii zaruurat hai, aur kučh-
mêe sirf kismat-kii.

3

1. us-koo nahii jaantaa.
2. jütneevaali paarTii šuruu kartii hai.
3. kučh kheelôo-mêe kismat-kii zaruurat hai, kučh-mee hušiaarii-
kii.
4. das hâi.
5. maidaan-mêe gaaRtee hâi.
6. jii. sab loog apni apni paarii-see kheeltee hâi.
7. masrneeuaalaa ‘*cut*’ hai.
8. ‘*run*’-kii taadaad-kee mutaabiḳ faislaa bootaa hai.

p. 386: 1

1. (ai) afsaroo
2. ajnabiioo

3. aurtoo
4. is suubee-kee musalmaanoo
5. ustaadoo
6. bižaaroo
7. naukaroo (naukroo)
8. barmee-kee loogoo
9. narsoo
10. baRhaiioo
11. meeree rišteedaaroo
12. mahel-kee darbaanoo

2

1. (ai) jahaazii
2. čaččaa

p. 387

3. bhatijee
4. DaakTar
5. čalaaneeualee
6. munšii
7. loogoo
8. xazaančii
9. sipaahiioo
10. daaroogaa
11. nars
12. Taliifuunuaalii

3

1. tamgee deene-kee pah^olee kii.
2. bahaadur sipaahiioo-koo diice.
3. uoo maujuud na-thee, leekin aziiz-nee reeDiioo-mée sunaa.
4. uoo fauj-kee oh^odoo-par hai.
5. us-kaa laRkaa hauaaii fauj-kaa suubeedaar hai, aur beeTii nars-kaa kaam šuruu karee-gii.
6. kahaas kee laRaaii-mée sab-koo kučh karnaa čaahitee.
7. loog faaḱaa kartee hai, kaarxaanee čalee gae, aur mulk sab taraf-see gheer liaa.

1. b
2. a
3. a

1. iew tamgee xufiaa xidmat-kee liiee diiee jaatee hāi.
2. kaidii muxtalif darjee-kee hāi. kooii afsar hāi, kooii maamulii sipaahii hāi.
3. us-kii kaamiiab-kee liiee baRii izzat inaam dii gaii.
4. kaidii loog faaḵaa kartee hāi.
5. Chatrii-kaa kaarxaanee-par hauaa-see hamlaa kiiaa.
6. hukuumat-kee mahokmee abhii moorčōō-see bahot duur hāi
7. Čhatriiuaalii plaTan-par bahot dafaa hamlaa kiiaa jaa Čukaa.
ab bilkul fatee kii.

p. 388

8. iew tah'xaanee hauaai hamlōō-kee xilaaf hai. safarmainōō-nee banaaee. maaluum hai kee mazbuut aur mah'fuuz hāi.
9. haualdaar-nee piičhee haarnee-kaa hukum diiaa, kiōō-kee hamēē sab taraf gheer liiaa thaa.
10. hamaaraa jamaadaar-koo marnee-kee baad izzat-kii Čapraas inaam dii.

p. 392:I

Operator: māi kalkattee-see bulaa rahii hūū.

janaab, kal aapnee tiin dafaa Tailifuun karnee-kii koošiš
kii, leekin kaamiaab na-thee.

nambar galat thaa.

Das: jii. aap-nee galat nambar diiaa.

Operator: nahii. aap-nee galat nambar kahaa, janaab.

Das: māi paisaa kiōō dūū. mai-nee kuč galat na-kiiaa.

Operator: meeree xiaal-mee aap-koo paisaa deenaa Čaahiiee.

leekin baabuu puučh-kar aap-koo phir bulasūū.
maaf kiijiiee, janaab.

II

Das: eek ghanTaa huuaa jaapaaniiōō-nee ham-par hamlaa kiaa.

Aziz: kiaa kooii aadmii mar gae iaa zaxmii hoo gae ?

Das: sirf doo sipaahii maaree gae leekin aThaaraa zaxmii hoo gae.
aur joo loog kal-kee hamlee-mēē zaxmii hoo gae thee uoo
bhii xandaḱ-mēē thee.

Aziz: aur jaapaaniiōō-koo kiaa huuaa.

Das: uoo piichee haT gae.

p. 393: III

Aziz: joo imaarat ban rahii hai uoo naiaa isTeeṣan hoo-gaa.

īTēē aur patthar istemaal kartee hāi.

leekin daruaazōō-kee liice uagairaa uagairaa lakRii-kaa milnaa
sab-see ziaadaa muṣkil hai.

bahot gahṛaa khoodnee-kii zarurat nahī, kiōō-kee zamiin
bahot mahfuuz hootaa hai.

IV

Das: kheel kis-nee kheela.

Joe: amriikaa aur inglistaan-kii paarTiiōō-kaa kheel thaa.

Das: aur kab thaa.

Joe: uoo guzree haftee-mēē kheele.

Das: kaun-sii paarTii haar gaii ? kiaa angreez ?

Das: hāā. angreez loog haar gae.

Dar: aur us-kee baad māi-nee sunaa kee bahot bahot dhuum-dhaam
saRkōō-mēē thaa. Thiik hai ?

Joe: jii hāā. itnaa huuaa kee pulis-daaroogaa-koo saRkēē band
karnaa paRaa.

V

Aziz: janaab, joo tamgaa singh-koo milaa, us-kii baabat kuḥ
bataaiice. kaisee milaa.

Das: suubeedaar-nee subaa-mēē hamlee-kaa hukum diaa. hamlaa
kartee kartee takriban sab sipaahii loog mar gae. leekin
uoo aagee baRh-kar ḱas kaidiōō-kee saath uaapas aaiia.

Aziz: tamgaa kis-nee diaa.

Das: afsar-nee diaa.

Aziz: aur tamḡaa inaam leene-par singh-nee kiaa kahaa, janaab.

Das: kahaa kee agar māi ab zaxmii na-hootaa too fauran phir
moorčōḍ-koo jaataa.

Here are the answers to the questions on pp. 392-393:

1. kalkattee-see.
2. us-nee kahaa kee laRkii-nee diiaa.
3. daas-koo šaaed paRee.
4. tiin dafaa.
5. baabuu-see puučhee-gii.
1. hamlaa kiiaa.
2. doo mar gacee, leekin aThaaraa zaxmii hoo gacee.
3. maaluuum nahii.
4. haa. joo kal-kee hamlee zaxmii huuee thee.
5. haT gacee.
1. isTeešan hoo-gaa.
2. patthar aur iiTēē.
3. lakRii.
4. ziaadaa nahii.
1. amrikan aur angreezii paarTiiāā.
2. guzree haftee-mēē.
3. angreez loog.
4. bahot dhuum-dhaam thaa.
5. kahaa kee saRkee band karēē.

1. subaa-mēē.
2. singh-koo.
3. agar zaxmii na-hootaa, too phir uaapas aataa.
4. das.
5. suubeedaar.

p. 393

1. meere baap-koo Taliifuun-par baat karnee-kii aadat nahii.
2. us-kii Tāāg-par gooli lag gaii leekin uoo xuš hai.
3. mujhee afsos hai kee aap-kee aanee-see pah'lee iew imaaarat
kiraace-par čaRh gaii.
4. uoo eek duusree-kee saath kheel rahee hāi.
5. ham bahot baRii fatee kar čukee.

6. tum-nee mujh-koo kahaa kee aaTh baj-kar das minat-par
Tailiifuun karnee-koo kahaa thaa. leekin jab mǎi-nee kiāa,
too kisii-nee jauaab na-dīāa.
 7. iee xat-kaa uazan doo čhaTǎāk hǎi.
 8. in loogōō-koo pheepRee-kii takliif hai.
 9. nadii-kee paar tairnee-kii koošiš karēē.
 10. lakRii-kaa maartaal Thiik nahīi.
 11. paasaa phēeknee-mee hušīarii-kii zaruurat hai.
 12. mazduurōō-kaa milnaa muškil hai.
 13. un-koo hamēē dhookaa deene-kaa kooii maukaa nahīi.
- p. 394
14. tum daraxt hilaa-kar seeb lee saktee.
 15. čhatriiuaalee sipaahii Thiik jagaa-par uutree leekin piīčhee har
čukaa thaa.
 16. kiāa aap-koo doo paiseeualee sigareT-kaa Dabbaa čaahiiee.
 17. dard hoo rahii hai, leekin meeraa xiaal hai kee xuun nahii nika
rahaa.
 18. agar tum apnaa auzaar leenaa jaao too Thiik hoo-gaa.
 19. kiāa aap bilkul biīč-mēē khaRee huuee aadmii-koo deekh saktee
hǎi?
 20. uoo čup čup ghuumtee rah*tee hai.
 21. is-kee uupar doo aanee-kii fiis hai.
 22. palTan-nee hamlaa kiāa, leekin kaamiaab na-huuii.
 23. ai sipaahii. kiāa tum nakšee-par mujhee gudaam dikhaa saktee
hoo?
 24. dauRtee huuee gēēd pakaRnee-mēē mahaaoree-kii zaruurat hai.
 25. meeraa xiaal hai kee us-koo ittefaak-see čooT lagii.
 26. us-nee kitnii dafa bulaaiaa.
 27. uoo lifafee čaar inč čauRee aur čhai inč lambee hǎi.
 28. mǎi-nee is-koo uazan nahīi kiāa, leekin meeree xiaal-see iee
maamulii xat-see ziaadaa uazan-kaa nahīi hai.
 29. uoo bičāraa murdeexaane-mēē hai. uoo us-koo dafan karnee-
kii intezaar-mēē hǎi.
 30. mujh-koo un khilaaRiiōō-sēē joo takliif-mēē hǎi kooii hamdardii
nahīi hai.
 31. kabrustaan-koo gaaRii-see jaanaa nazdiik hai.
 32. kuuēē-mee deekhtee deekhtee paanii gaaleb hoo jaataa hai.
 33. ghar-kee piīčheuuaalee kuuēē-see ziaadaa gah*raa kuuāā khoodnaa
muškil hai.

34. fuT-see ziaadaa gah^hraa khoodnee-mēi zamiin patthar-kii taraa saxt hoo jaatii hai.
35. uoo apnii Tāāg tooR čukaa thaa. ab us-nee apnaa ceh^hraa jalaa liiaa hai.
36. sab-see nazdik lakRii-kaa pul hai joo mah^hfuuz nahii.
37. taaš kheel-kar apnii kismat kabhii mat-aazmaanoo.
38. agar tum zamiin-par leeT jaaēē, too ham gooliidō-see mah^hfuuz hoo jaaēē-gee.
39. us-nee jhanDii-koo zamiin-mēē gaaR diiaa aur bhaag gaiaa.
40. kiaa hauaai maidaan-koo jaanee-kee liie mujh-koo gaađō-kee biič-mēē-see jaanaa paRee-gaa iaa māi us-kee paas-see guṁar saktaa hūū ?

p. 395

1. doonō jhanDiiđ-koo tiin fuT-kee faislee-par rakhoo.
2. uoo apnee naam-kii hijee karnaa nahii jaantaa.
3. us-nee kabhii kisii-koo nahii bataaiaa kee uoo kahāā jaa rahaa thaa.
4. uoo uahāā na-thaa jahaa us-nee bataaiaa.
5. agar Tailifuun pāāč bajnee-mēē biis minaT iaa čhai bajnee-mēē pāāč minaT-par aataa, too mujh-koo maaluum hootaa.
6. phuul laanaa na-bhuulnaa.
7. un-koo apnee murdee dafan karnee-kaa kooii uakt na-thaa.
8. har eek aadmii muxtalif muxtalif čizēē pasand kartaa hai.
9. čhooTii naaoo-mee nadii paar karnaa xatarnaak hai.
10. kuč^h•din huuee eek jauaan aadmii-nee duusree kinaaree-tak tairnee-kii koošiš kii. uoo darmiiaan-mee takriiban Duub gaiaa thaa.
11. agar asp mujh-koo samjhaee, too mai šaaed samajh saktū.
12. us-ķisim-kaa oh^hdaa milnee-mēē hušiaarii aur ķismet-kii zaruurat hai.
13. har eek apnee mulk-koo uapas čalaa gaiaa.
14. un-koo eek dafaa pah^hlee beeimaanii-see juuaa kheelnee-mee jurmaanaa hoo čukaa hai.
15. har eek muxtalif muxtalif mahoknee-mēē kaam kartaa hai.
16. hamaaraa jamaadaar laRtee huuee mar gaiaa.
17. us-kee bah^hrii hoo jaanee-kaa xatraa hai.
18. haalāā-kee uoo ķariib ķariib faaķaa kar rahee thee, uoo eek inč bhii piichee na-haTee.

19. kal takriir karnee-kaa iraadaa kar rahee hāi.
20. aisiī takriir karnaa joo sab-koo xuš karēe aasaan nahīi.
21. takriir karnee-ke liiee čaar sau miil-kaa safar karnaa paRee-gaa.
22. hamaaree kučh dusman haar čukee hai.
23. jis daruaazee-see andar aae thee, us-see jaao aur us-koo band kar doo.

p. 396

24. us mulk-mēe duusree kheelōō-kaa rauaaj hai.
25. kooii fauj hameešaa pičhee haTnee-see nahīi jitiī.
26. axbaar-mēe likhaa huuaa hai kee safarmainaa-kīi paTan-nee
nadii paar karnee-ke liiee naee pul banaae hāi.
27. doonōō taraf jaanee-ke liiee doo saRkēe hāi.
28. agar uo apnīi xušīi-see baahar aaēē, too tum-koo banduuk
čalaanaa hoo-gaa.
29. kučh jahazii eek duusree-koo kahaaniīāā sunaa-kar uakt guzaar
rahee hai.
30. uoo doo ghanTee-ke baad milee aur bačaaee gaee.

2

1. -kaa
2. (daag) nikaalnaa
3. (aurat) loogōō-kaa
4. hāstee hāstee
5. paanii pitee
6. doo baras-see
7. doo baras-tak
8. leeTaa thaa
9. baiThneeuuaalaa
10. kheelnee-mēe kismatuaalaa

